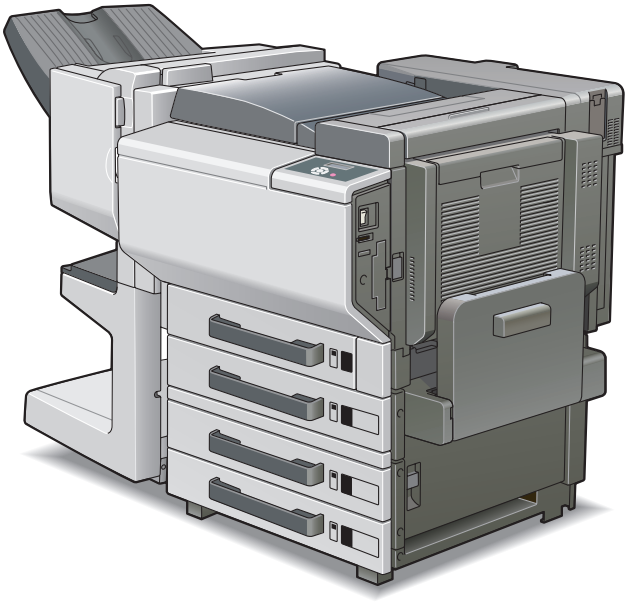
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР

KONICA MINOLTA

bizhub C450P

User Manual



The essentials of imaging

Introduction

копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР

Introduction

Thank you for choosing this machine.

This manual contains details on the operation of the various functions of the machine, precautions on its use, and basic troubleshooting procedures. In order to ensure that this machine is used correctly and efficiently, carefully read this manual before using the machine. After reading the manual, store it in the designated holder so that it can easily be referred to when questions or problems arise during operation.

The illustrations used in this manual may appear slightly different from views of the actual equipment.

Energy Star®

As an Energy Star® Partner, we have determined that this machine meets the Energy Star® Guidelines for energy efficiency.

What is an Energy Star® product?

An Energy Star® product has a special feature that allows it to automatically switch to a “low-power mode” after a period of inactivity. An Energy Star® product uses energy more efficiently, saves you money on utility bills and helps protect the environment.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Trademarks and registered trademarks

KONICA MINOLTA, KONICA MINOLTA Logo, and The essentials of imaging are registered trademarks or trademarks of KONICA MINOLTA HOLDINGS, INC.

PageScope and bizhub are registered trademarks or trademarks of KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

Netscape Communications, the Netscape Communications logo, Netscape Navigator, Netscape Communicator, and Netscape are trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation.

This machine and PageScope Box Operator are based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Compact-VJE
Copyright 1986-2003 VACS Corp.

RC4® is a registered trademark or trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

RSA® is a registered trademark or trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

OpenSSL Statement

OpenSSL License

Copyright © 1998-2000 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.
Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:
   “This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)”
4. The names “OpenSSL Toolkit” and “OpenSSL Project” must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.
5. Products derived from this software may not be called “OpenSSL” nor may “OpenSSL” appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@crypt-Soft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.
This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).
The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.
This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code.
The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).
Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.
Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

"This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@crypt-soft.com)"
The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:
"This product includes software written by Tin Hudson (tjh@crypt-soft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

All other product names mentioned are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Contents

Introduction

Energy Star® x-3
What is an Energy Star® product? x-3
Trademarks and registered trademarks x-4
Contents x-7
Explanation of manual conventions x-16
Safety advices x-16
Sequence of action x-16
Tips x-17
Special text markings x-17

1 Installation and operation precautions

1.1 Safety information 1-3
Warning and precaution symbols 1-3
Meaning of symbols 1-4
Disassemble and modification 1-4
Power cord 1-5
Power source 1-6
Power plug 1-7
Grounding 1-7
Installation 1-8
Ventilation 1-9
Actions in response to troubles 1-9
Consumables 1-10
When moving the machine 1-11
Before successive holidays 1-11

1.2 Regulation notices 1-12
CE Marking (Declaration of conformity) for users of the European Union (EU) 1-12
USER INSTRUCTIONS FCC PART 15 - RADIO FREQUENCY DEVICES (for U.S.A. users) 1-12
INTERFERENCE-CAUSING EQUIPMENT STANDARD (ICES-003 ISSUE 4) (for Canada users) 1-12
For users in countries not subject to class B regulations 1-13
LED radiation safety 1-13
Ozone release 1-14
Acoustic noise (For European users only) 1-14

1.3 Caution notations and labels 1-15

1.4 Space requirements 1-16

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.5 Operation precautions 1-17
Power source 1-17
Operating environment 1-17
Storage of printed pages 1-17

1.6 Part names and their functions 1-18
Options 1-18
Outside of machine 1-20
Inside of machine 1-25
Finisher FS-603/punch kit 1-26
Finisher FS-507/job separator 1-28
Control panel 1-31

1.7 Basic operations 1-32
Turning on the machine 1-32
Turning off the machine 1-33
Automatically canceling the settings (automatic panel reset) 1-34
Automatically conserving energy (Low Power mode) 1-34
Automatically conserving energy (Sleep mode) 1-35

1.8 Connecting to a computer 1-36
Compatible interfaces 1-36
Connection diagram 1-37

2 Setting up the printer driver

2.1 CD-ROM configuration 2-3
CD-ROMs 2-3

2.2 About the provided printer drivers 2-4
Printer drivers and supported operating systems 2-4
System requirements 2-5
Setting up the system 2-6

2.3 Installing the printer driver 2-7
When used with Windows 2-7
Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard 2-9
For Windows XP/Server 2003 2-9
For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0 2-11
Installing the printer driver using Plug and Play 2-13
For Windows 98SE 2-13
For Windows Me/2000 2-14
For Windows XP/Server 2003 2-16
Uninstalling the printer driver 2-18
For Windows 2-18
When used with Macintosh 2-19
Installing the printer driver 2-19
For Mac OS X 2-19

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting a printer 2-21
For Mac OS X 2-21
For Mac OS 9.2 2-21
Uninstalling the printer driver 2-23
For Mac OS X 2-23
For Mac OS 9.2 2-24

2.4 Printing operations 2-25
For Windows 2-25
Printing operation 2-25
Test printing 2-26
For Macintosh 2-26
Printing operation 2-26

2.5 Setting up network printing 2-27
Overview of network functions 2-27
Setting the IP address for this machine 2-30
Specifying the TCP/IP settings 2-30
Accessing PageScope Web Connection 2-33
SMB printing 2-34
Operations on this machine 2-34
Printer driver settings (For Windows 98SE/Me) 2-36
Printer driver settings
(For Windows 2000/XP/NT 4.0/Server 2003) 2-36
LPR printing 2-37
Operations on this machine 2-37
Printer driver settings (For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003) 2-37
Printer driver settings (For Windows NT 4.0) 2-38
IPP printing (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003) 2-38
Operations on this machine 2-38
Installing the printer driver 2-40
Printing with NetWare 2-42
Network printing in a NetWare environment 2-42
For remote printer mode with NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation ... 2-42
Setting up a network 2-43
For print server mode with NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation 2-45
Setting up a network 2-45
For NetWare 4.x remote printer mode (NDS) 2-48
Setting up a network 2-48
For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 print server mode (NDS) 2-50
Setting up a network 2-50
For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS) 2-53
Setting up a network 2-53
Specifying client (Windows) settings
when using the NetWare server 2-55
Printing with Macintosh 2-56
Operations on this machine 2-56

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying Macintosh settings 2-58
For Mac OS X 2-58
For Mac OS 9.2 2-59

3 Specifying printer driver settings

3.1 Setting the printing functions 3-3
For Windows 3-3
To display the printer driver setup dialog box 3-3
For Macintosh 3-4

3.2 Setting up the PCL driver 3-5
Selecting the printer 3-5
Prerequisite 3-5
Settings 3-6
Specifying the Setup tab settings 3-10
Printing to suit the paper size 3-10
Saving custom sizes 3-11
Selecting the paper source 3-12
Assigning a paper type 3-12
Specifying Double-sided/Booklet printing 3-13
Printing multiple pages on one page (N in 1) 3-14
Setting the file margin 3-15
Stapling 3-16
Hole punching 3-17
Selecting the output method 3-18
Specifying Account Track settings 3-21
Specifying the Per Page Setting tab settings 3-22
Printing documents with a front cover/back cover 3-22
Printing multiple pages 3-23
Specifying the Overlay tab settings 3-24
Printing different original documents together (Overlay) 3-25
Editing forms 3-26
Specifying the Watermark tab settings 3-28
Printing a watermark 3-28
Editing a watermark 3-29
Printing the document number 3-30
Specifying the Quality tab settings 3-31
Changing the settings 3-32
Specifying the Font tab settings 3-33
Replacing fonts 3-33
Specifying the Option tab settings 3-34
Selecting options 3-35
Saving the driver settings 3-36
To save the driver settings 3-36
Restoring the settings 3-38
Deleting the settings 3-38

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3.3 Setting up the PostScript driver (Windows) 3-39
Selecting the printer 3-39
Prerequisite 3-39
Settings 3-41
Specifying the Setup tab settings 3-47
Printing to suit the paper size 3-47
Saving custom sizes 3-48
Selecting the output method 3-49
Specifying Account Track settings 3-52
Specifying the Layout tab settings 3-53
Printing multiple pages on one page (N in 1) 3-54
Double-sided printing 3-55
Setting the file margin 3-55
Stapling 3-56
Hole punching 3-57
Specifying the Per Page Setting tab settings 3-58
Printing documents with a front cover/back cover 3-59
Specifying the Watermark tab settings 3-59
Printing a watermark 3-60
Editing a watermark 3-61
Specifying the Quality tab settings 3-63
Specifying settings 3-63
Font settings 3-64
Specifying the Option tab settings 3-65
Selecting options 3-66
Saving the driver settings 3-67
To save the driver settings 3-67
Viewing the settings 3-69
Changing the settings 3-69

3.4 Setting up the PPD driver (Windows) 3-70
Settings 3-70
Specifying the Paper tab settings 3-73
To specify the paper settings 3-73
Specifying the Device Options tab settings 3-74
To specify advanced functions 3-74
Selecting options 3-76
To select an option 3-76

3.5 Setting up the PPD driver (Mac OS 9.2) 3-78
Settings 3-78
Page Setup 3-83
Basic settings (Page Attributes) 3-83
Custom Page Sizes 3-85
PostScript Options 3-86
Printing 3-87
Basic settings (General) 3-87

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing multiple pages on one page (Layout) 3-88
Printer-specific options (Finishing Options 1 to 4) 3-89
Selecting options 3-91
To select an option 3-91

3.6 Setting up the PPD driver (Mac OS X) 3-93
Settings 3-93
Page setup 3-97
Basic settings (Page Attributes) 3-97
Custom Paper Size 3-98
Printing 3-99
Basic settings (Copies & Pages) 3-99
Printing multiple pages on one page (Layout) 3-100
Paper Feed 3-101
Security 3-101
Selecting the output method 3-102
Finishing 3-104
Image Processing 3-105
Setup 3-107
Selecting options 3-108
To select an option 3-108
Saving the driver settings 3-109
To save the driver settings 3-109
Viewing the settings 3-110
Changing the settings 3-110

4 Control panel settings

4.1 Control panel 4-3
Available keys 4-3
Basic operations 4-4
Basic menu operations 4-4
Sleep mode 4-6
Administrator password 4-8

4.2 Overview of utility mode parameters 4-10
Settings menu list 4-10

4.3 Parameters 4-23
Job Operation 4-23
Paper Tray 4-24
User Setting 4-24
Admin. Setting 4-30

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 Loading copy paper

5.1 Paper 5-3
Possible paper sizes 5-3
Paper types and paper capacities 5-4
Special paper 5-5
Precautions for paper 5-7
Paper storage 5-7
Print area 5-8
Automatic paper-tray-switching feature 5-8
Order for selecting the paper trays 5-9

5.2 Loading copy paper 5-10
Loading paper into Tray 1 5-10
To load paper (Tray 1) 5-10
Loading paper into Tray 2, 3, or 4 5-14
To load paper (Tray 2, 3, or 4) 5-14
Loading paper into the LCT 5-16
To load paper (LCT) 5-16
Loading paper into the bypass tray 5-18
To load paper (bypass tray) 5-18

5.3 Specifying finishing settings 5-23
Stapling prints (Staple settings) 5-23
Punching holes in prints (Punch settings) 5-24

5.4 Specifying center binding 5-25

6 Replacing consumables

6.1 Replacing the toner cartridge 6-3
To replace the toner cartridge 6-5

6.2 Replacing the staples 6-8
To replace the staple cartridge for Finisher FS-507 6-8
To replace the staple cartridge for Finisher FS-603 6-12

7 Maintenance

7.1 Cleaning 7-3
Housing 7-3
Control panel 7-3
Paper take-up roller 7-4
Electrostatic charger 7-4
Emptying the waste containers 7-5
To empty the hole-punch waste container in Finisher FS-507 7-5
To empty the hole-punch waste container in Finisher FS-603 7-7

7.2 When the message “Preventive Maintenance Time” appears 7-8

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8 Troubleshooting

8.1 When the message “Trouble” appears (call technical representative) 8-3
To call the technical representative 8-4

8.2 When the message “Paper Misfeed at” appears 8-5
Paper misfeed indications 8-6
To clear a paper misfeed in the bypass tray 8-7
To clear a paper misfeed in the automatic duplex unit 8-9
To clear a paper misfeed in Tray 1 or 2 8-10
To clear a paper misfeed in a paper tray (Tray 3 or 4) 8-11
To clear a paper misfeed in the LCT 8-12
To clear a paper misfeed in the right-side door 8-13
To clear a paper misfeed in the fusing unit 8-16
To clear a paper misfeed in Finisher FS-507 8-19
To clear a paper misfeed in Finisher FS-603 8-23

8.3 When the message “Replenish paper” appears 8-27
To replenish paper 8-27

8.4 Clearing a staple jam 8-28
To clear jammed staples in Finisher FS-507 8-28
To clear jammed staples in Finisher FS-603 8-31

8.5 When “near life limit” appears 8-36

8.6 Simple troubleshooting 8-37
Main unit 8-37
Finisher 8-38
Printer driver 8-39

8.7 Main messages and their remedies 8-42

9 Additional settings

9.1 Using PageScope Web Connection 9-3
System requirements 9-3
Accessing PageScope Web Connection 9-3
Structure of pages 9-4
Administrator mode 9-6
Logging on to Administrator mode 9-6
Web browser cache 9-8
On Internet Explorer 9-8
On Netscape 9-8
User mode 9-9
Administrator mode 9-13
Basic operation 9-13

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

9.2 Managing print jobs 9-17
Specifying job operations 9-17
Storing jobs 9-19
Recalling a job 9-19
Printing when account track settings have been specified 9-23
Setting procedure (for Windows) 9-24
Setting procedure (for Mac OS X) 9-25
Job operations in PageScope Web Connection 9-25

10 Appendix

10.1 Specifications 10-3
bizhub C450P 10-3
Automatic duplex unit 10-5
Option specifications 10-6
Paper Feed Cabinet PC-102 10-6
Paper Feed Cabinet PC-202 10-6
Paper Feed Cabinet PC-402 10-7
Finisher FS-603 10-7
Punch Kit PK-501 10-8
Finisher FS-507 10-8
Job Separator JS-601 10-9

10.2 Configuration page 10-10

10.3 Font list 10-11
PCL font list 10-11
PS font list 10-12

10.4 Test page 10-13

10.5 Glossary 10-14

10.6 Index 10-19

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Explanation of manual conventions

The marks and text formats used in this manual are described below.

Safety advices

⚠ DANGER

Failure to observe instructions highlighted in this manner may result in fatal or critical injuries in fact of electrical power.

➔ Observe all dangers in order to prevent injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe instructions highlighted in this manner may result in serious injuries or property damage.

➔ Observe all warnings in order to prevent injuries and to ensure safe use of the machine.

⚠ CAUTION

Failure to observe instructions highlighted in this manner may result in slight injuries or property damage.

➔ Observe all cautions in order to prevent injuries and to ensure safe use of the machine.

Sequence of action

1 The number 1 as formatted here indicates the first step of a sequence of actions.

2 Subsequent numbers as formatted here indicate subsequent steps of a sequence of actions.

? Text formatted in this style provides additional assistance.

➔ Text formatted in this style describes the action that will ensure the desired results are achieved.

An illustration inserted here shows what operations must be performed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Tips

Note

Text highlighted in this manner contains useful information and tips to ensure safe use of the machine.

Reminder

Text highlighted in this manner contains information that should be reminded.

Detail

Text highlighted in this manner contains references for more detailed information.

Special text markings

[Stop] key
The names of keys on the control panel are written as shown above.

MACHINE SETTING
Display texts are written as shown above.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1 Installation and operation precautions

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1 Installation and operation precautions

1.1 Safety information

This section contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To achieve optimum utility of this device, all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual.

Please read the following section before connecting the machine to the supply. It contains important information related to user safety and preventing equipment problems.

Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

Make sure you observe all of the precautions appear in each section of this manual.

Warning and precaution symbols

The following indicators are used on the warning labels or in this manual to categorize the level of safety warnings.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Meaning of symbols

Symbol	Meaning	Example	Meaning
	A triangle indicates a danger against which you should take precaution.		This symbol warns against possible causes of burns.
	A diagonal line indicates a prohibited course of action.		This symbol warns against dismantling the device.
	A black circle indicates an imperative course of action.		This symbol indicates you must unplug the device.

Disassemble and modification

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Do not attempt to remove the covers and panels which have been fixed to the product. Some products have a high-voltage part or a laser beam source inside that could cause an electrical shock or blindness.	
• Do not modify this product, as a fire, electrical shock, or breakdown could result. If the product employs a laser, the laser beam source could cause blindness.	

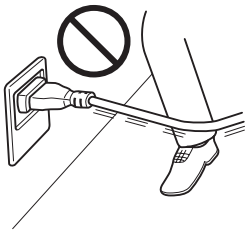
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Power cord

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Use only the power cord supplied in the package. If a power cord is not supplied, only use the power cord and plug that is specified in POWER CORD INSTRUCTION. Failure to use this cord could result in a fire or electrical shock.	
• Use the power cord supplied in the package only for this machine and NEVER use it for any other product. Failure to observe this precaution could result in a fire or electrical shock.	
• Do not scratch, abrade, place a heavy object on, heat, twist, bend, pull on, or damage the power cord. Use of a damaged power cord (exposed core wire, broken wire, etc.) could result in a fire or breakdown. Should any of these conditions be found, immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and then call your authorized service representative.	 

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Power source

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Use only the specified power source voltage. Failure to do that could result in a fire or electrical shock.	
• Connect power plug directly into wall outlet having the same configuration as the plug. Use of an adapter leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or shock. If proper wall outlet is not available, the customer shall ask qualified electrician for the installation.	
• Do not use a multiple outlet adapter nor an extension cord in principle. Use of an adapter or an extension cord could cause a fire or electrical shock. Contact your authorized service representative if an extension cord is required.	
• Consult your authorized service representative before connecting other equipment on the same wall outlet. Overload could result in a fire.	

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• The outlet must be near the equipment and easily accessible. Otherwise you can not pull out the power plug when an emergency occurs.	

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Power plug

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Do not unplug and plug in the power cord with a wet hand, as an electrical shock could result.	
• Plug the power cord all the way into the power outlet. Failure to do this could result in a fire or electrical shock.	

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• Do not tug the power cord when unplugging. Pulling on the power cord could damage the cord, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.	
• Remove the power plug from the outlet more than one time a year and clean the area between the plug terminals. Dust that accumulates between the plug terminals may cause a fire.	

Grounding

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Connect the power cord to an electrical outlet that is equipped with a grounding terminal.	

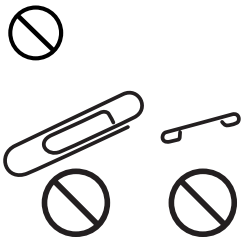
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Installation

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Do not place a flower vase or other container that contains water, or metal clips or other small metallic objects on this product. Spilled water or metallic objects dropped inside the product could result in a fire, electrical shock, or breakdown. Should a piece of metal, water, or any other similar foreign matter get inside the product, immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and then call your authorized service representative.	

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• After installing this product, mount it on a secure base. If the unit moves or falls, it may cause personal injury.	
• Do not place the product in a dusty place, or a site exposed to soot or steam, near a kitchen table, bath, or a humidifier. A fire, electrical shock, or breakdown could result.	
• Do not place this product on an unstable or tilted bench, or in a location subject to a lot of vibration and shock. It could drop or fall, causing personal injury or mechanical breakdown.	
• Do not let any object plug the ventilation holes of this product. Heat could accumulate inside the product, resulting in a fire or malfunction.	
• Do not use flammable sprays, liquids, or gases near this product, as a fire could result.	

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Ventilation

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• Always use this product in a well ventilated location. Operating the product in a poorly ventilated room for an extended period of time could injure your health. Ventilate the room at regular intervals.	

Actions in response to troubles

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Do not keep using this product, if this product becomes inordinately hot or emits smoke, or unusual odor or noise. Immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and then call your authorized service representative. If you keep on using it as is, a fire or electrical shock could result.	
• Do not keep using this product, if this product has been dropped or its cover damaged. Immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power cord from the power outlet, and then call your authorized service representative. If you keep on using it as is, a fire or electrical shock could result.	

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• The inside of this product has areas subject to high temperature, which may cause burns. When checking the inside of the unit for malfunctions such as a paper misfeed, do not touch the locations (around the fusing unit, etc.) which are indicated by a “Caution HOT” caution label.	

Consumables

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring this warnings could cause serious injury or even death.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Warning	Symbol
• Do not throw the toner cartridge or toner into an open flame. The hot toner may scatter and cause burns or other damage.	

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• Do not leave a toner unit or drum unit in a place within easy reach of children. Licking or ingesting any of these things could injure your health.	
• Do not store toner units and PC drum units near a floppy disk or watch that are susceptible to magnetism. They could cause these products to malfunction.	

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

When moving the machine

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• Whenever moving this product, be sure to disconnect the power cord and other cables. Failure to do this could damage the cord or cable, resulting in a fire, electrical shock, or breakdown.	
• When moving this product, always hold it by the locations specified in the user manual or other documents. If the unit falls it may cause severe personal injury. The product may also be damaged or malfunction.	

Before successive holidays

When the optional Fax Kit FK-502 is not installed:

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring this cautions could cause injury or damage to property.

➔ Do not ignore this safety advices.

Caution	Symbol
• Unplug the product when you will not use the product for long periods of time.	

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.2 Regulation notices

CE Marking (Declaration of conformity) for users of the European Union (EU)

This product complies with the following EU directives:
89/336/EEC, 73/23/EEC and 93/68/EEC directives.

This declaration is valid for the area of the European Union.

This device must be used with a shielded network (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX) cable and a shielded parallel cable. The use of non-shielded cables is likely to result in interference with radio communications and is prohibited under CISPR rules and local rules.

USER INSTRUCTIONS FCC PART 15 - RADIO FREQUENCY DEVICES (for U.S.A. users)

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules.
These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

WARNING: The design and production of this unit conform to FCC regulations, and any changes or modifications must be registered with the FCC and are subject to FCC control. Any changes made by the purchaser or user without first contacting the manufacturer will be subject to penalty under FCC regulations.

This device must be used with a shielded network (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX) cable and a shielded parallel cable. The use of non-shielded cables is likely to result in interference with radio communications and is prohibited under FCC rules.

INTERFERENCE-CAUSING EQUIPMENT STANDARD (ICES-003 ISSUE 4) (for Canada users)

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For users in countries not subject to class B regulations

⚠ WARNING

Interference with radio communications.

- ➔ This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.
- ➔ This device must be used with a shielded network (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX) cable and a shielded parallel cable. The use of non-shielded cables is likely to result in interference with radio communications and is prohibited under CISPR rules and local rules.

LED radiation safety

This product is a copier which operates by means of a LED (light emitting diodes) exposure system. There is no possibility of danger from the LED optical radiation, because the LED optical radiation level does not exceed the accessible radiation limit of class 1 under all conditions of operation, maintenance, service and failure.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Ozone release

⚠ CAUTION

Locate the Machine in a Well Ventilated Room

➔ A negligible amount of ozone is generated during normal operation of this machine. An unpleasant odor may, however, be created in poorly ventilated rooms during extensive machine operations. For a comfortable, healthy, and safe operating environment, it is recommended that the room well ventilated.

⚠ ATTENTION

Une quantité d'ozone négligable est dégagée pendant le fonctionnement de l'appareil quand celui-ci est utilisé normalement.
Cependant, une odeur désagréable peut être ressentie dans les pièces dont l'aération est insuffisante et lorsque une utilisation prolongée de l'appareil est effectuée. Pour avoir la certitude de travailler dans un environnement réunissant des conditions de confort, santé et de sécurité, il est préférable de bien aérer la pièce ou se trouve l'appareil.

➔ Placer l'appareil dans une pièce largement ventilée.

Acoustic noise (For European users only)

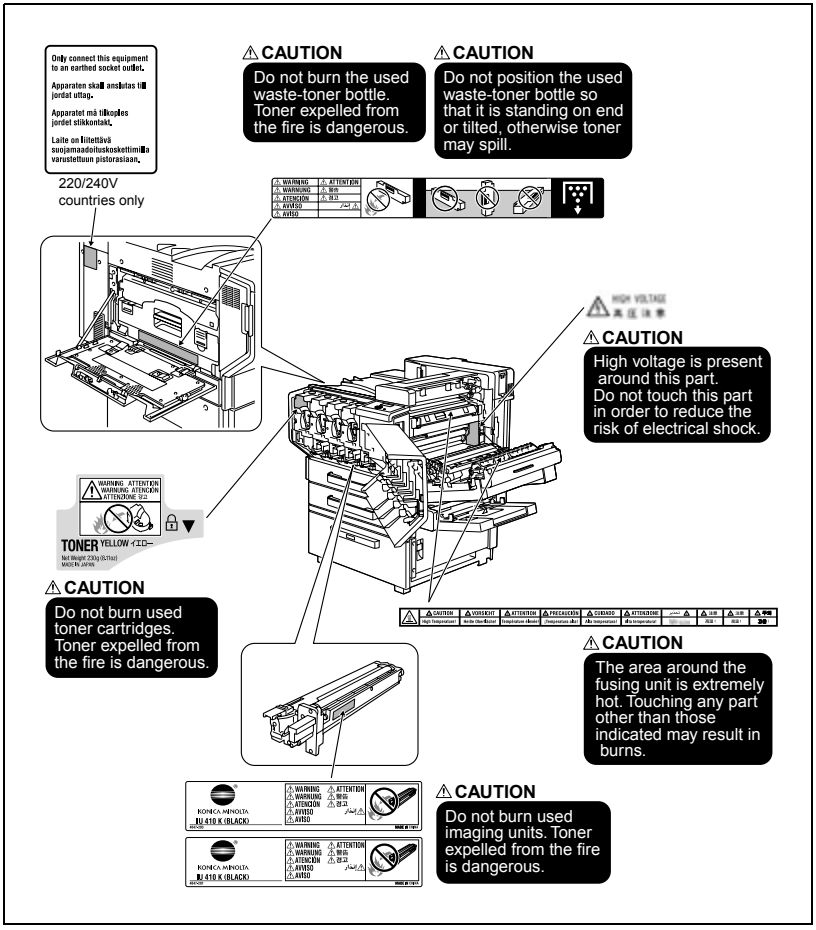
Maschinenlärminformations-Verordnung 3. GPSGV: Der höchste Schalldruckpegel beträgt 70 dB(A) oder weniger gemäß EN ISO 7779.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.3 Caution notations and labels

Safety precaution notations and labels appear on this machine at the following positions.

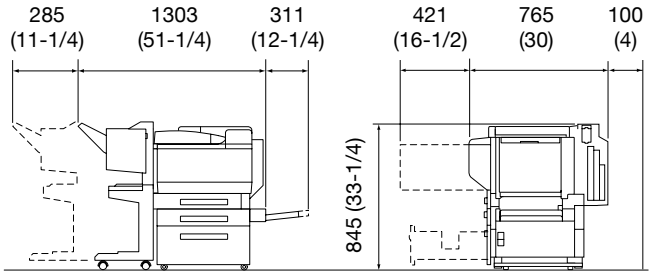
Be very careful that an accident does not occur when operations such as removing paper misfeeds are performed.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.4 Space requirements

To ensure that machine operation, consumables replenishing, part replacement, and regular maintenance can easily be performed, adhere to the recommended space requirements detailed below.



Unit: mm (inch)

C450P+FS-603+PC-402

Reminder

Be sure to allow a clearance of 100 mm (4 inch) or more at the back of this machine for the ventilation duct.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.5 Operation precautions

To ensure the optimum performance of this machine, observe the precautions described below.

Power source

The power source requirements are as follows.

- Voltage fluctuation: Maximum ±10% (at 110 V/120-127 V/220-240 V AC)
- Frequency fluctuation: Maximum ±3 Hz (at 50 Hz/60 Hz)

– Use a power source with as little voltage or frequency fluctuations as possible.

Operating environment

The environmental requirements for correct operation of the machine are as follows.

- Temperature: 10°C (50°F) to 30°C (86°F) with fluctuations of no more than 10°C (18°F) within an hour
- Humidity: 15% to 85% with fluctuations of no more than 20% within an hour

Storage of printed pages

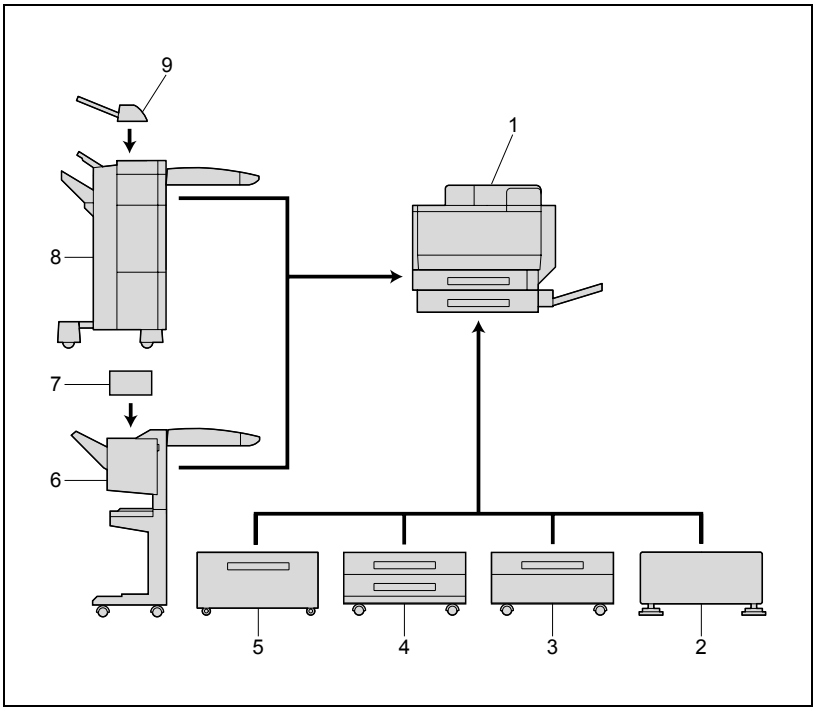
To store printed pages, follow the recommendations listed below.

- Printed pages that are to be kept for a long time should be stored where they are not exposed to light in order to prevent them from fading.
- Adhesive that contains solvent (e.g., spray glue) may dissolve the toner on printed pages.
- Color printed pages have a thicker layer of toner than normal black-and-white printed pages. Therefore, when a color printed page is folded, the toner at the fold may peel off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.6 Part names and their functions

Options



No.	Part Name	Description
1	Main unit	The data sent from the computer is printed by the printer section. Referred to as the “machine”, the “main unit”, or the “C450P” throughout the manual.
2	Desk DK-501	Allows this machine to be set up on the floor Referred to as the “desk” throughout the manual.
3	Paper Feed Cabinet PC-102	The top tray can be loaded with up to 500 sheets of paper, and the bottom tray can be used as storage. Referred to as the “single paper feed cabinet” throughout the manual.
4	Paper Feed Cabinet PC-202	Both the top and bottom trays can each be loaded with up to 500 sheets of paper. Referred to as the “double paper feed cabinet” throughout the manual.
5	Paper Feed Cabinet PC-402	Can be loaded with up to 2,500 sheets of paper Referred to as the “LCT” throughout the manual.

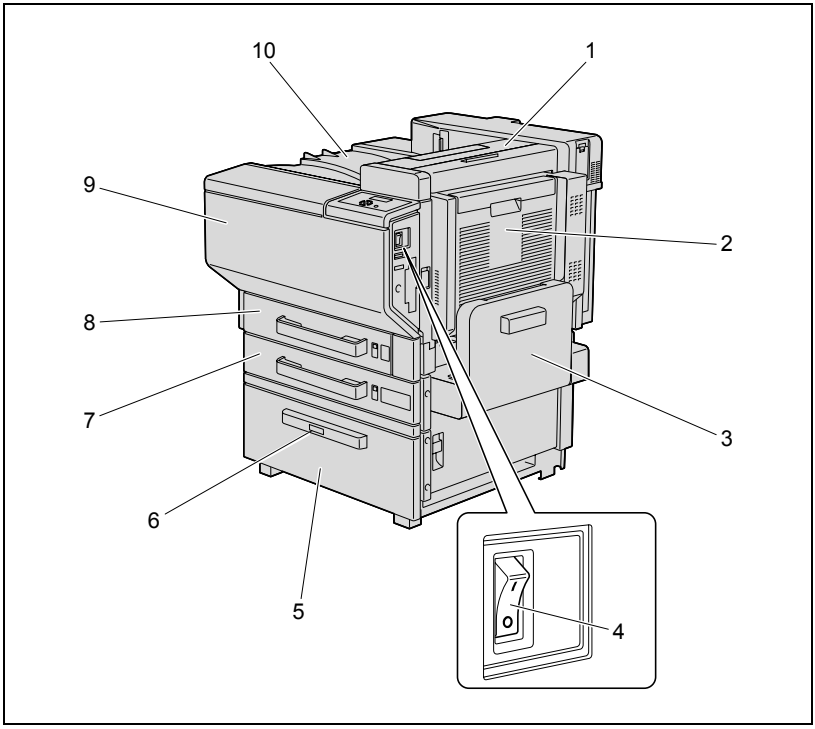
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

No.	Part Name	Description
6	Finisher FS-603	Feeds out printed pages. The “Offset” setting (separating), Staple settings (stapling), and “Fold & Staple” function (binding) are available. • In order to install the finisher, the main unit must be installed on the desk, on the LCT, on the single paper feed cabinet, or on the double paper feed cabinet.
7	Punch Kit PK-501	Allows hole punching to be used if installed onto Finisher FS-603 Referred to as the “punch kit” throughout the manual.
8	Finisher FS-507	Feeds out printed pages. The “Offset” setting (separating), Staple settings (stapling), and Punch settings (hole punching) are available. • In order to install the finisher, the main unit must be installed on the desk, on the LCT, on the single paper feed cabinet, or on the double paper feed cabinet.
9	Job Separator JS-601	Print exit tray installed on Finisher FS-507 Referred to as the “job separator” throughout the manual.
10	Mount Kit MK-703*	Required to mount the local interface kit
11	Local Interface Kit EK-702*	Used for making a local connection between this machine and the computer
12	Dehumidifier Heater 1C*	Installed in the paper feed cabinet or desk to prevent humidity from collecting in the paper
13	Mechanical Counter MC-501*	Shows the total number of black printouts made
14	Hard Disk Drive HD-501*	Operations using the “Secured Print” and “Save in User Box” settings can be used if the hard disk drive is installed.

* Parts marked with an asterisk (*) are internal options and therefore are not shown in the illustration.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Outside of machine

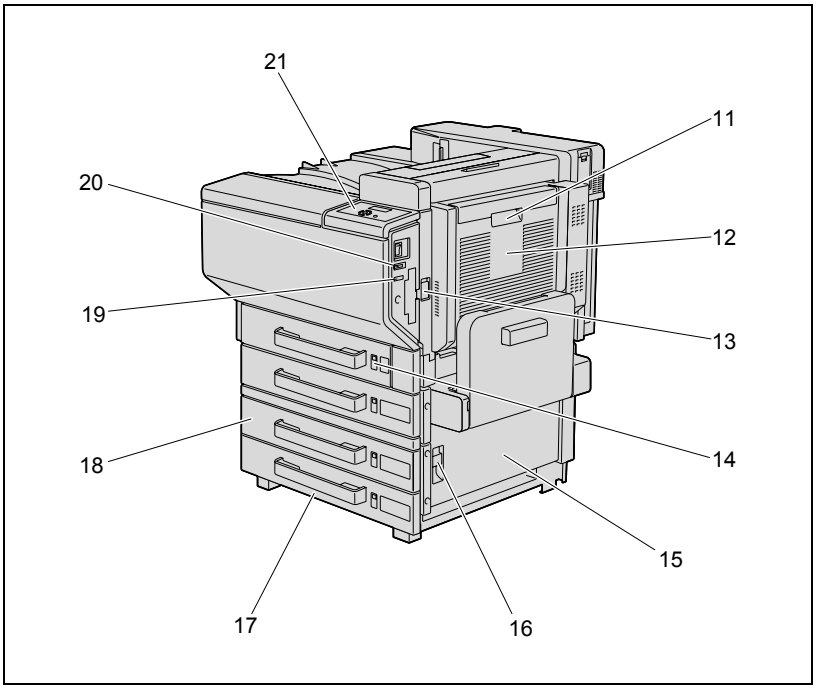


* The illustration above shows the main unit with the optional LCT installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

No.	Part Name	Description
1	Fusing unit cover	Opened after opening the right-side door when clearing paper misfeeds
2	Automatic duplex unit	Turns over the paper for double-sided printing
3	Multiple bypass tray	Used when printing onto paper with a size not loaded into a paper tray or onto thick paper, overhead projector transparencies, A6cards, envelopes or label sheets Holds up to 150 sheets of plain paper, 20 overhead projector transparencies, A6cards, label sheets or sheets of thick paper, or 10 envelopes Referred to as the “bypass tray” throughout the manual. (See p. 5-18.)
4	Power switch	Used to turn the machine on and off (See p. 1-32)
5	LCT	Can be loaded with up to 2,500 sheets of plain paper With thick paper, up to 1,000 sheets can be loaded.
6	Tray release button	Pressed in order to pull out the paper tray for the LCT
7	Tray 2	Can be loaded with up to 500 sheets of plain paper (See p. 5-14.) With thick paper, up to 150 sheets can be loaded.
8	Tray 1	Can be loaded with up to 250 sheets of plain paper, can be set to different paper sizes, and can be loaded with up to 20 sheets of thick paper, A6cards, label sheets, or 10 envelopes (See p. 5-10.)
9	Front door	Opened when replacing a toner cartridge (See p. 6-5.)
10	Print exit tray	Collects printed pages

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

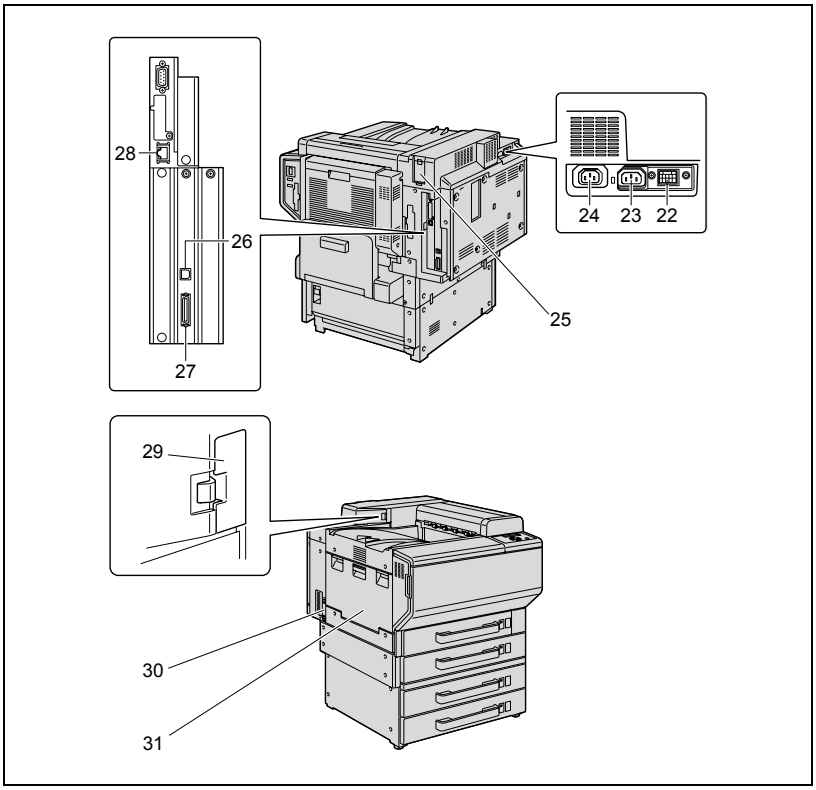


* The illustration above shows the main unit with the optional double paper feed cabinet and mechanical counter installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

No.	Part Name	Description
11	Automatic duplex unit release lever	Used to open the automatic duplex unit door when clearing paper misfeeds
12	Automatic duplex unit door	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the automatic duplex unit
13	Right-side door release lever for the main unit	Used to open the main unit right-side door
14	Paper-empty indicator	Indicates the amount of paper remaining When the indicator is completely red, the tray is empty.
15	Right-side door of the paper feed cabinet	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds
16	Right-side door release lever for the paper feed cabinet	Used to open the right-side door of the paper feed cabinet when clearing paper misfeeds
17	Tray 4/storage tray	Used for storage when the single paper feed cabinet is installed Can be loaded with up to 500 sheets of plain paper when the double paper feed cabinet is installed With thick paper, up to 150 sheets can be loaded. (See p. 5-14.)
18	Tray 3	Can be loaded with up to 500 sheets of plain paper With thick paper, up to 150 sheets can be loaded. (See p. 5-14.)
19	Mechanical counter	Shows the total number of black printouts made
20	Total counter	Shows the total number of pages that have been printed
21	Control panel	Used to specify the various settings (See p. 1-31.)

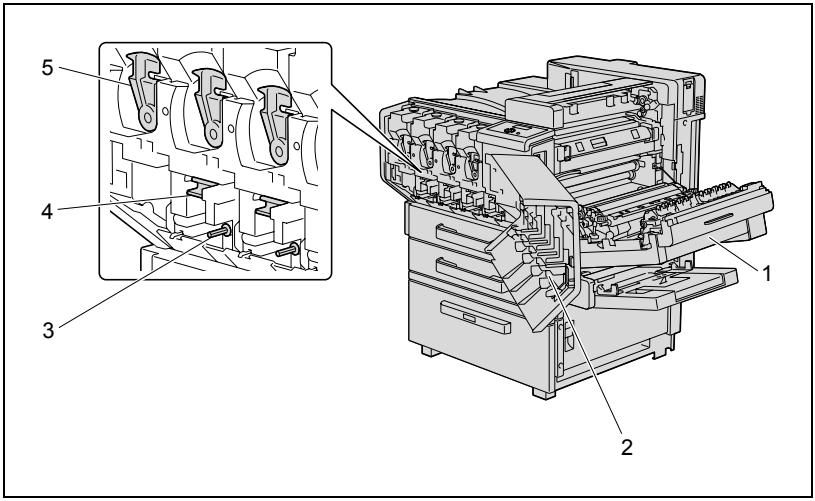
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru



No.	Part Name	Description
22	Finisher connector	Used for connecting the finisher hookup cord
23	Power connector	Used for connecting the power cord
24	Power connector for the external image controller	Used for connecting the power cord for the external image controller
25	Filter 2	Collects the toner dust generated in the machine
26	USB port (type B) USB 2.0/1.1-compliant	Used for connecting a USB cable from the computer
27	IEEE1284 port (type C)	Used for connecting the parallel cable from the computer
28	Network connector (10 Base-T/100 Base -TX)	Used for connecting the network cable when this machine is used for network printing
29	Filter 1	Collects the toner dust generated in the machine
30	Ozone filter	Collects the ozone generated in the machine
31	Left-side door	Opened when replacing the waste-toner box

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

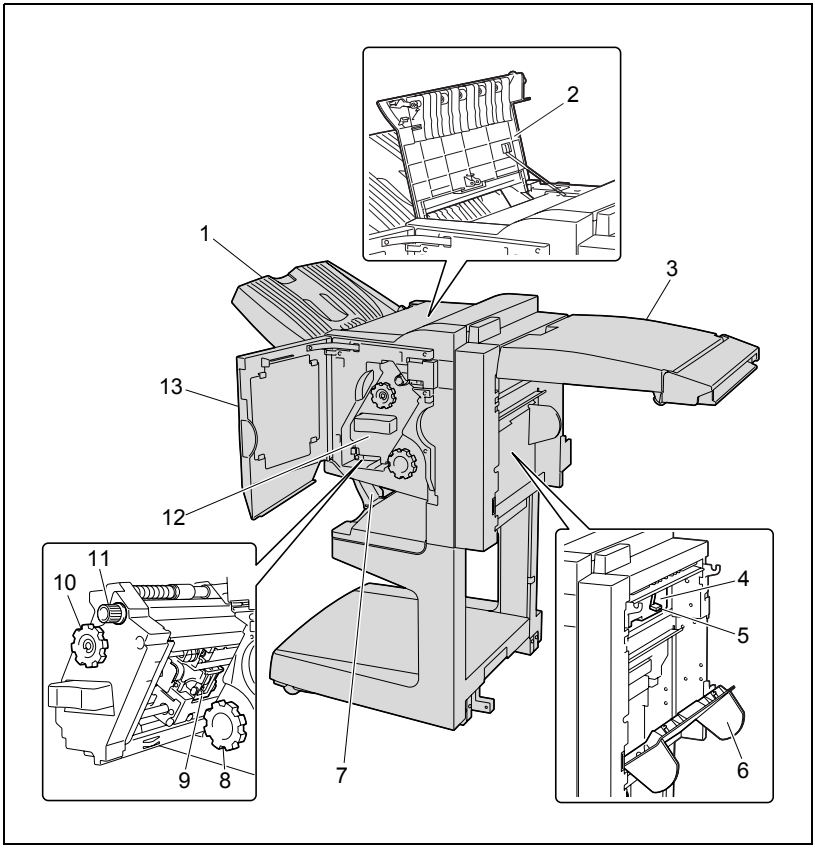
Inside of machine



No.	Part Name	Description
1	Main unit right-side door	Open when clearing paper misfeeds in the right-side door unit or the fusing unit
2	LED-cleaning tool	Used to clean the surface of the LED unit, for example, when replacing the image transfer belt unit
3	Charger-cleaning tool	Used to clean the electrostatic charger wire, for example, when incorrect prints are produced (See p. 7-4.)
4	Imaging-unit-securing lever	Used when installing and replacing the imaging units
5	Toner-cartridge-securing lever	Used when installing and replacing the toner cartridges

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Finisher FS-603/punch kit



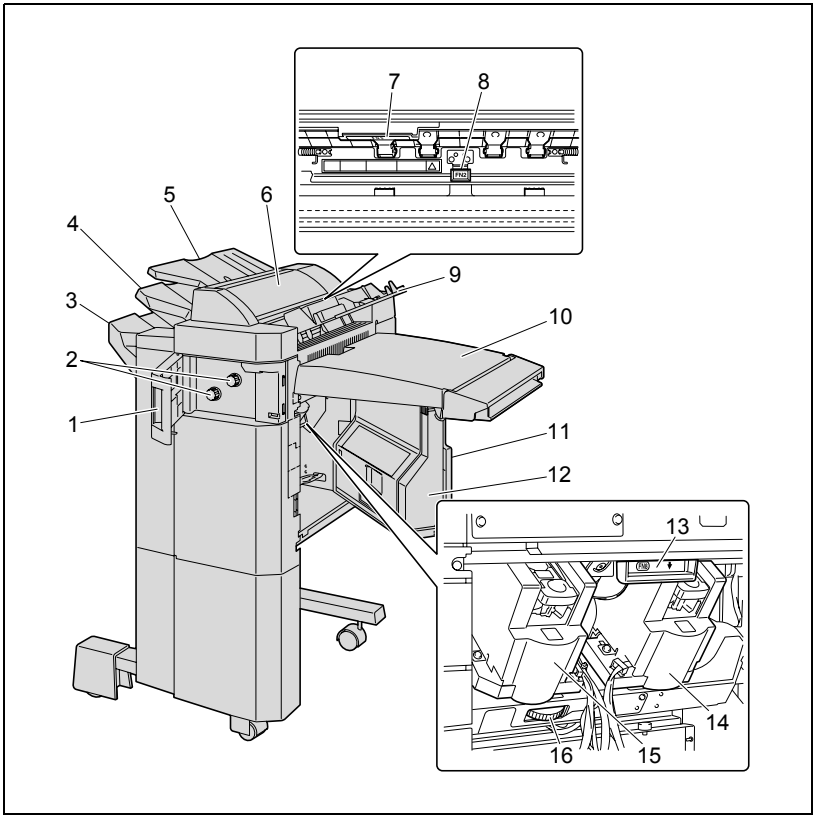
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

No.	Part Name	Description
1	Exit tray 1	Collects printed pages
2	Upper door	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds (See p. 8-23.)
3	Horizontal transport unit cover	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds from the horizontal transport unit (See p. 8-23.)
4	Hole-punch waste container	Removed when emptying hole-punch waste that has accumulated from using the Punch settings (See p. 7-7.)
5	Misfeed-clearing guide	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-23.)
6	Right-side door	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-23.)
7	Exit tray 2	Collects pages printed using the “Fold & Staple” setting
8	Misfeed-clearing dial in folding section	Turned when clearing paper misfeeds in the folding section (See p. 8-23.)
9	Staple cartridge holder	Removed from the stapler unit when clearing jammed staples or replacing the staple cartridge (See p. 8-31, p. 6-12.)
10	Misfeed-clearing dial 1	Turned when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-23.)
11	Misfeed-clearing dial 2	Turned when clearing jammed staples or replacing the staple cartridge, or for moving the staple cartridge holder out to the front (See p. 8-31.)
12	Stapler unit	Pulled out when clearing jammed staples or replacing the staple cartridge (See p. 8-31, p. 6-12.)
13	Front door	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds or jammed staples or when replacing the staple cartridge (See p. 8-31, p. 6-12.)
14	Punch kit*	Punches holes for filing printed pages when punch kit is installed onto Finisher FS-603

* Parts marked with an asterisk (*) are installed within the finisher and therefore are not shown in the illustration.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Finisher FS-507/job separator



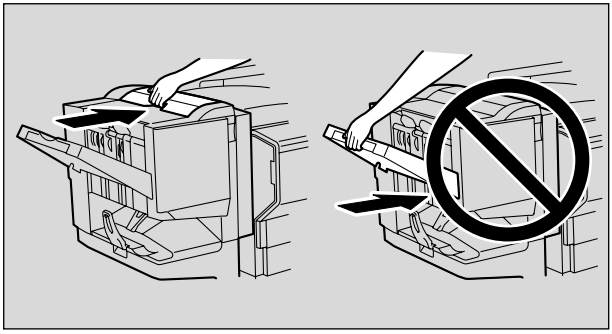
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

No.	Part Name	Description
1	Front door FN4	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-19.)
2	Misfeed-clearing dials FN5	Turned when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-19.)
3	Exit tray 2	Collects printed pages
4	Exit tray 1	Collects printed pages
5	Exit tray 3	Feeds out printed pages when job separator is installed onto Finisher FS-507
6	Job separator cover	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the job separator (See p. 8-19.)
7	Misfeed-clearing guide FN3	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-19.)
8	Misfeed-clearing guide FN2	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-19.)
9	Upper cover FN1	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-19.)
10	Horizontal transport unit cover	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds from the horizontal transport unit (See p. 8-19.)
11	Right-side door FN7	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds, emptying hole-punch waste, or replacing the staple cartridge
12	Hole-punch waste container	Removed when emptying hole-punch waste that has accumulated from using the Punch settings (See p. 7-5.)
13	Misfeed-clearing guide FN8	Opened when clearing paper misfeeds within the finisher (See p. 8-19.)
14	Stapler 1	Used to staple pages
15	Stapler 2	Used to staple pages
16	Jammed-staple-clearing dial	Turned when clearing jammed staples or replacing the staple cartridge, or for moving the stapler to the center (See p. 8-28, p. 6-8.)

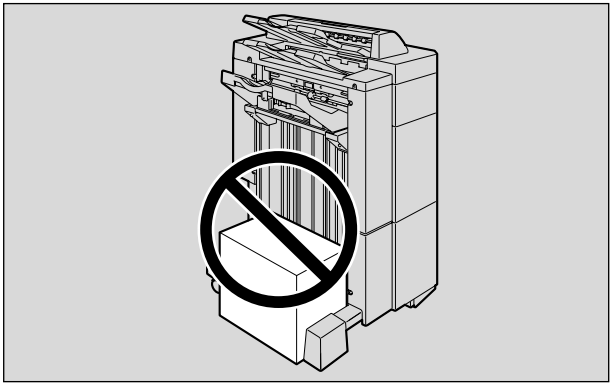
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Precautions for using the finisher:

- When moving the finisher, do not grab the exit tray.

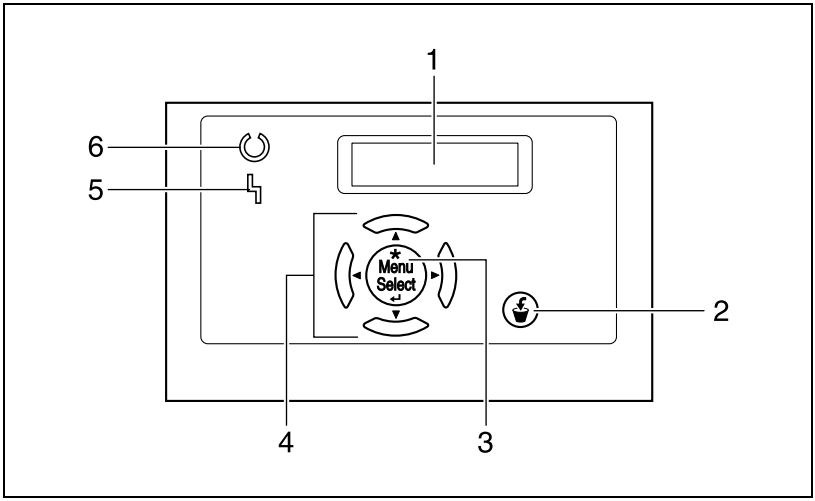


- Do not place objects below exit tray 2. If the exit tray falls, damage may result.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Control panel



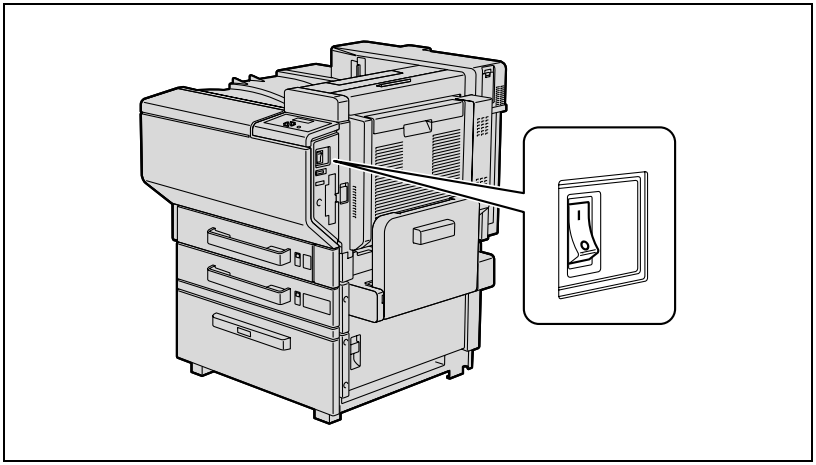
No.	Part Name	Description
1	Display panel	Displays various screens and messages.
2	Cancel key	Press to cancel printing and other operations.
3	[Menu/Select] key	Press to display the menu and select settings.
4	Cursor keys	Press to change the menu and to enter values.
5	Error indicator	Lights up when an error occurs
6	Ready indicator	Lights up when printing is possible and flashes when data is being received, and during RIP and printing

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.7 Basic operations

Turning on the machine

➔ Set the power switch to [|].



Detail

When the machine is turned on, the printer starts up and the message "Now warming-up." appears. After the message "Ready to print." appears and the Ready indicator lights up, a print job can be received.

Detail

The default settings, which are those that are selected immediately after the machine is turned on, can be changed. For details, refer to "Control panel" on page 4-3.

The factory default settings are the settings that were selected when this machine was sent from the factory.

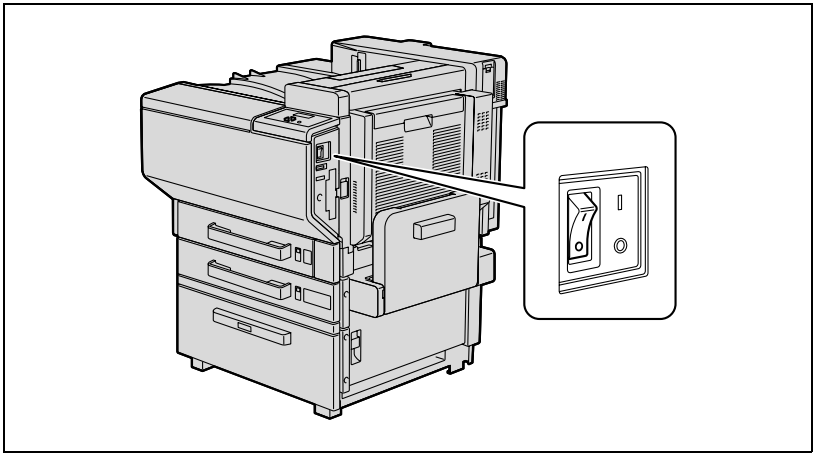
Note

The machine takes about 99 seconds to warm up at normal room temperature (23°C) when the control panel is turned on using the power switch.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Turning off the machine

➔ Set the power switch to [◯].



...

Reminder

Do not turn off the machine with the power switch while it is making printing, otherwise a paper misfeed may occur.

Do not turn off the machine with the power switch while a queued job or stored data is waiting to be printed, otherwise the jobs will be deleted.

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

Detail

The following are cleared when the power switch is turned off.
Settings that have not been programmed
Jobs queued to be printed

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Automatically canceling the settings (automatic panel reset)

If no operation is performed for a specified length of time while settings are being changed, settings that have not been programmed are cleared and return to their default settings.

This is the automatic panel reset operation.

As the factory default, the automatic panel reset operation is performed after 1 minute.

Detail

The length of time until the automatic panel reset operation is performed and whether or not it is performed can be set from the Utility mode. For details, refer to “User Setting” on page 4-24.

Automatically conserving energy (Low Power mode)

If no operation is performed for a specified length of time, the control panel goes off and the machine automatically enters a mode where it conserves energy.

This is the Low Power mode.

The machine can receive jobs even while it is in Low Power mode.

As the factory default, the machine enters Low Power mode after 10 minutes.

To recover from Low Power mode

When a print job is received, the machine recovers from Low Power mode and begins printing after it has finished warming up (within 30 seconds at normal room temperature (23 °C)).

Note

The Low Power mode can also be canceled by pressing any key in the control panel.

Detail

The length of time until the machine enters Low Power mode can be changed. For details, refer to “User Setting” on page 4-24.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Automatically conserving energy (Sleep mode)

If no operation is performed for a specified length of time, the machine automatically enters a mode where it conserves energy.

Although the machine conserves more energy in Sleep mode than in Low Power mode, the machine must warm up when Sleep mode is canceled to begin printing again, therefore taking more preparation time than Low Power mode.

As the factory default, the machine enters Sleep mode after 15 minutes.

To recover from Sleep mode

When a print job is received, the machine recovers from Sleep mode and begins printing after it has finished warming up (within 99 seconds at normal room temperature (23 °C)).

Note

The Sleep mode can also be canceled by pressing any key in the control panel.

Detail

The length of time until the machine enters Sleep mode can be changed. For details, refer to “User Setting” on page 4-24

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

1.8 Connecting to a computer

Compatible interfaces

The various interfaces that can be used to connect this printer to a computer are described below.

Ethernet interface

Connect when using this printing system as a network printer.

Supports 10Base-T and 100Base-TX standards. In addition, the Ethernet interface supports the TCP/IP (LDP/LPR, peer-to-peer), IPX/SPX (NetWare), and AppleTalk (EtherTalk) protocols.

Parallel interface (optional)

Connect when using this printing system as a local printer.

A computer running Windows and an IEEE 1284 parallel cable are required for connection. Use a parallel cable that uses a terminal with an Amphenol 36-pin male connector.

The parallel interface supports the compatible, nibble, and ECP modes.

USB interface (optional)

Connect when using this printing system as a network printer.

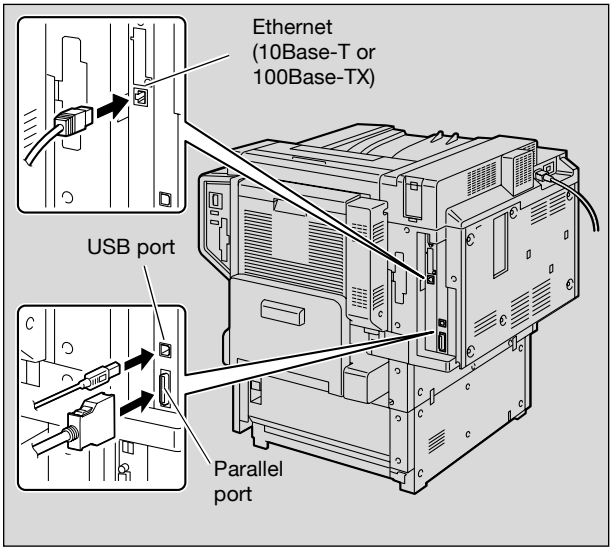
The USB interface can be connected to a computer running Windows. A USB cable is required for connection. Use a type A (4 pin, male) or type B (4 pin, male) USB cable. A USB cable measuring 3 meters or less is recommended.

The USB and parallel interfaces cannot be used as the same time. Change the setting in the “I/F Setting” menu of the “Admin. Setting” menu.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Connection diagram

The printer cables can be connected to each port at the back of this machine.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

2 Setting up the printer driver

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

2 Setting up the printer driver

2.1 CD-ROM configuration

CD-ROMs

The printer controller CD-ROMs consist of the following:

- User Software CD-ROM (Win/Mac)
- PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM (Win/Mac)

Each CD-ROM contains printer drivers (for Windows and for Macintosh) and utilities as well as screen fonts and documentation, such as the User's Guides and release notes.

Browse through the CD-ROMs for the desired folders and files.

- The folder names and file names may not be starting from the root directory.
- Use all of the files in the EN (English) folder.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

2.2 About the provided printer drivers

Printer drivers and supported operating systems

In order to use this printing system, the printer driver must be installed. The printer driver is a program that controls the processing of data for output. Install the printer driver onto the computer from the provided CD-ROM.

The printer drivers included on the CD and the supported computer operating systems are listed below. Install the required printer driver.

- PCL (PCL XL) Konica Minolta Driver:
  Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 6a), Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional, and Windows Server 2003
- PostScript 3 Emulation Konica Minolta (PS Visual):
  Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 6a), Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional, and Windows Server 2003
- PostScript PPD Driver
  Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Mac OS 9.2 or later, Mac OS X 10.2, and Mac OS X 10.3

...

Note

The User Software CD-ROM contains the PCL printer driver, and the PostScript CD (Win) and PostScript CD (Mac) contain the PostScript drivers.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

System requirements

Check that the computer being connected meets the following conditions.

Windows

- Operating System:
  Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 6a or later), Windows 2000 Professional (Service Pack 4a or later), Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later), Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later), or Windows Server 2003
- Processor: Pentium or higher
- Memory: Capacity recommended for the operating system
  With sufficient memory resources in the operating system and application being used
- Drive: CD-ROM
- Web Browser (when using PageScope Web Connection):
  Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 or later recommended (JavaScript enabled, Cookies enabled)
  Microsoft XML Parser (MSXML) 3.X must be installed when using Internet Explorer 5.x .
  Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript enabled, Cookies enabled)
  J2RE (Java 2 Runtime Environment) required

Macintosh

- Operating System: Mac OS 9.2, Mac OS X 10.2, or Mac OS X 10.3
- Processor: PowerPC
- Memory: Capacity recommended for the operating system
- Drive: CD-ROM
- Web Browser (when using PageScope Web Connection):
  Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript enabled, Cookies enabled)

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setting up the system

In order to use this printing system, it must first be set up.

Setup consists of connecting this machine to a computer and installing the printer driver onto the computer being used.

Setup the printing system as described below.

1 Connect this machine to a computer. (Refer to “Connecting to a computer” on page 1-36.)

2 Install the printer driver. (Refer to “Installing the printer driver” on page 2-7.)

- Installation of the printer driver may differ depending on the connection method used with this machine in addition to the operating system of the computer and the type of printer driver being used.

3 When using a network connection, set up the network. (Refer to “Setting up network printing” on page 2-27.)

4 Check the setup by printing a test page. (Refer to “Test printing” on page 2-26.)

- To update an existing printer driver, delete the existing printer driver first. For details, refer to “Uninstalling the printer driver” on page 2-18.
- As necessary, set the interface timeout settings and parallel interface mode (Compatible, Nibble, or ECP) in the I/F Setting menu from the control panel. When using a parallel or USB port, you must select the port being used. For details, refer to “Admin. Setting” on page 4-30.

5 Install the screen fonts.

- The User Software CD-ROM and PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM contain the Latin TrueType fonts as the screen fonts.
- Install the screen fronts after adding the operating system standard fonts. For details, refer to Help of the operating system.
- The screen fonts are located in the Screenfont or Screenfonts folder on the CD-ROM.
- To install the Macintosh fonts, install the fonts after decompressing them.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

2.3 Installing the printer driver

When used with Windows

The installation procedure of the Windows printer driver differs depending on how this machine is connected to the computer and depending on which printer drive is used. The installation method also differs depending on the version of Windows that you are using. Refer to the pages indicated below for the appropriate procedure for installing the printer driver on your computer.

PCL (All connection methods):

PostScript/PCL (Network connection):
To install the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard, refer to “Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard” on page 2-9, “For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0” on page 2-11, or “For Windows XP/Server 2003” on page 2-9.

PostScript/PCL (Parallel connection):
To install the printer driver using Plug and Play, refer to “Installing the printer driver using Plug and Play” on page 2-13, “For Windows 98SE” on page 2-13, “For Windows Me/2000” on page 2-14, or “For Windows XP/Server 2003” on page 2-16.
To install the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard, refer to “Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard” on page 2-9, “For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0” on page 2-11, or “For Windows XP/Server 2003” on page 2-9.

PostScript/PCL (USB connection):
To install the printer driver using Plug and Play, refer to “Installing the printer driver using Plug and Play” on page 2-13, “For Windows 98SE” on page 2-13, “For Windows Me/2000” on page 2-14, or “For Windows XP/Server 2003” on page 2-16.

...

Note

For details on installing the printer driver in a network environment, refer to “Setting up network printing” on page 2-27. Because it is necessary to specify other network settings in advance when installing the printer driver using a network connection, install it using a local connection at this time.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Note

To install the printer driver on a computer running Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, log on with a user name registered with Administrator privileges.

To connect this machine to a computer using a parallel connection or a USB connection, the optional local interface kit is required.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard

Detail

For IPP printing, it is not necessary to install the printer driver at this time since IPP printing setup is performed when the printer driver is installed. For further details on IPP printing, refer to "IPP printing (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003)" on page 2-38.

For Windows XP/Server 2003

1 Insert the Windows printer driver CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

- Konica Minolta PCL driver: User Software CD-ROM
- Konica Minolta PostScript driver: PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

2 Click the [Start] button, and then click "Printers and Faxes".

3 For Windows XP, click "Add a printer" on the "Printer Tasks" menu. For Windows Server 2003, double-click the "Add Printer" icon.

The Add Printer Wizard starts up.

4 Click the [Next] button.

5 Select "Local printer attached to this computer", and then click the [Next] button.

- Clear the "Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer" check box.
- For details on installing the printer driver in a network environment, refer to "Setting up network printing" on page 2-27. Because it is necessary to specify other network settings in advance when installing the printer driver using a network connection, install it using a local connection at this time.

6 The Select Printer Port dialog box appears. Select "LPT1" here, and then click the [Next] button.

7 Click the [Have Disk] button.

8 Click the [Browse] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

9 Depending on the operating system and printer driver that you are using, specify the folder on the CD-ROM that contains the printer driver, and then click the [OK] button.

- Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
- Konica Minolta PostScript driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

10 Click the [OK] button.

The “Printers” list appears.

11 Click the [Next] button.

12 Follow the on-screen instructions.

13 When installation is complete, make sure that the icon of the installed printer appears in the Printers and Faxes window.

14 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

Note

When the Digital Signature message appears, click the [Continue] button.

When using a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been specified.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0

1 Insert the Windows printer driver CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

- Konica Minolta PCL driver: User Software CD-ROM
- Konica Minolta PostScript driver: PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

2 Click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

The Printers window appears.

3 Double-click the “Add Printer” icon.

The Add Printer Wizard starts up.

4 Follow the on-screen instructions.

5 On the screen for selecting the printer connection, select “Local Printer”.

- For details on installing the printer driver in a network environment, refer to “Setting up network printing” on page 2-27. Because it is necessary to specify other network settings in advance when installing the printer driver using a network connection, install it using a local connection at this time.

6 Click the [Next] button.

7 Click the [Have Disk] button.

8 Click the [Browse] button.

9 Depending on the operating system and printer driver that you are using, specify the folder on the CD-ROM that contains the printer driver, and then click the [OK] button.

- Windows 98SE/Me
  Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
- Windows 2000
  Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
  Konica Minolta PostScript driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

– Windows NT 4.0
  Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
  Konica Minolta PostScript driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

10 Click the [OK] button.

The “Printers” list appears.

11 Click the [Next] button.

12 Specify the connection port. Select “LP1” here.

13 Follow the on-screen instructions.

– When using a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been specified.

14 When installation is complete, make sure that the icon of the installed printer appears in the Printers window.

15 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Installing the printer driver using Plug and Play

For Windows 98SE

1 After using a parallel cable or a USB cable to connect this machine to a computer, turn on the computer.

- Do not disconnect or connect the cable while the computer is starting up.

2 Insert the Windows printer driver CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

- Konica Minolta PCL driver: User Software CD-ROM
- Konica Minolta PostScript driver: PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

3 Turn this machine on.

The Add New Hardware Wizard starts up.

4 Click the [Next] button.

5 Select "Search for the best driver for your device (Recommended)", and then click the [Next] button.

6 Select "Specify a location", and then click the [Browse] button.

7 Depending on the operating system and printer driver that you are using, specify the folder on the CD-ROM that contains the printer driver, and then click the [OK] button.

- Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
- Konica Minolta PostScript PPD driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

8 Click the [Next] button, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

9 The Add New Hardware Wizard dialog box appears again. Repeat steps 4 through 8.

10 When installation is complete, make sure that the icon of the installed printer appears in the Printers window.

11 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For Windows Me/2000

1 After using a parallel cable or a USB cable to connect this machine to a computer, turn on the computer.

– Do not disconnect or connect the cable while the computer is starting up.

2 Insert the Windows printer driver CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

– Konica Minolta PCL driver: User Software CD-ROM
– Konica Minolta PostScript driver: PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

3 Turn this machine on.

– The Add New Hardware Wizard starts up.

4 Select "Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)" (for Windows Me, select "Automatic search for a better driver (Recommended)"), and then click the [Next] button.

5 For Windows 2000, select "Specify a location", and then click the [Next] button.

For Windows Me, select "Specify a Location", and then click the [Browse] button.

6 Depending on the operating system and printer driver that you are using, specify the folder on the CD-ROM that contains the printer driver, and then click the [OK] button.

– For Windows Me
Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
PostScript PPD driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM
– For Windows 2000
Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
Konica Minolta PostScript driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

7 Click the [OK] button (for Windows Me, click the [Next] button), and then follow the on-screen instructions.

8 Click the [Finish] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

9 When installation is complete, make sure that the icon of the installed printer appears in the Printers window.

10 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For Windows XP/Server 2003

1 After using a parallel cable or a USB cable to connect this machine to a computer, turn on the computer.

– Do not disconnect or connect the cable while the computer is starting up.

2 Insert the Windows printer driver CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

– Konica Minolta PCL driver: User Software CD-ROM
– Konica Minolta PostScript driver: PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

3 Turn this machine on.

The Add New Hardware Wizard starts up.

4 Select “Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)”, and then click the [Next] button.

5 Under “Search for the best driver in these locations”, select “Include this location in the search”, and then click the [Browse] button.

6 Depending on the operating system and printer driver that you are using, specify the folder on the CD-ROM that contains the printer driver, and then click the [OK] button.

– Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the User Software CD-ROM
– Konica Minolta PostScript driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

7 Click the [Next] button, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

– When the Digital Signature message appears, click the [Continue] button.

8 Click the [Finish] button.

9 When installation is complete, make sure that the icon of the installed printer appears in the Printers and Faxes window.

10 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Note

If the Add New Hardware Wizard does not appear, turn the machine off, then on again.

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Uninstalling the printer driver

If it becomes necessary to delete the printer driver, for example, when you want to reinstall the printer driver, follow the procedure below to delete the driver.

For Windows

1 For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 In the Printers window (for Windows XP/Server 2003, Printers and Faxes window), select the icon of the printer that you want to delete.

3 Press the [Delete] key on the computer keyboard to delete the printer driver.

4 Follow the on-screen instructions.

– When the printer driver has been deleted, the printer icon will disappear from the Printers window (for Windows XP/Server 2003, Printers and Faxes window).

This completes the uninstallation procedure.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

When used with Macintosh

The installation procedure for the Macintosh printer driver differs depending on the Mac OS version and printer driver being used. Refer to the pages indicated below for the appropriate procedure for installing the printer driver on your Macintosh computer.

- Mac OS X 10.2 and Mac OS 10.3 (PostScript PPD): Refer to “Installing the printer driver” on page 2-19.
- Mac OS X 9.2 (PostScript PPD): Refer to “Selecting a printer” on page 2-21.

Installing the printer driver

...

Note

Enter the requested administrator’s name and password. For the administrator’s name and password, contact your network administrator.

To exit the installation, click the [Cancel] button.

For Mac OS X

1 Turn the Macintosh computer on.

2 Insert the Macintosh printer driver CD-ROM into the Macintosh computer’s CD-ROM drive.

– Quit all running applications that may have started when the Macintosh computer was turned on.

3 Open the OS10_2_x or OS_3_x folder in English\Driver on the CD.

4 Select the folder for the Mac OS version being used, and then copy the driver file onto the desktop.

5 Double-click the file copied onto the desktop.

6 Click the [Continue] button and follow the on-screen instructions until the Installation dialog box appears.

7 On the Easy Install dialog box, click the [Install] button.
The printer driver is installed onto the Macintosh computer. When installation is complete, a message appears.

– From the second time the printer driver is installed, the [Install] button may appear as the [Upgrade] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8 Click the [Close] button.

This completes the printer driver installation.
Next, select the printer.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting a printer

For Mac OS X

After connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer, it can be used as a printer by selecting it in Print Center or the Printer Setting Utility as the printer to be used.

1 Open Print Center or Printer Setup Utility, located in Hard Disk\Applications\Utilities.

2 When the Add Printer dialog box appears, click the [Add] button. When the printer list appears, click the [Add] button.

– If usable printers have already been set up, the Add Printer dialog box does not appear.

3 Select the applicable connection method and printer name.

4 Select “KONICA MINOLTA” from the “Printer Model” drop-down list.

5 Select “KONICA MINOLTA C450 PS(P)”, and then click the [Add] button.

The selected printer is registered in the printer list.

For Mac OS 9.2

After connecting this machine, it can be used as a printer by selecting the PostScript printer from the Chooser and by specifying the printer description (PPD) file.

First, copy the printer description (PPD) file onto the Macintosh computer.

1 Insert the Macintosh printer driver CD-ROM into the Macintosh computer’s CD-ROM drive.

2 Open the OS 9_x folder in English\Driver on the CD.

3 Select the KONICAMINOLTAC450UVxxx.ppd file, and then copy it into the Printer Description File folder in Hard Disk\System Folder\Function Enhancer.

Next, select a printer.
The printer driver can use a standard Macintosh LaserWriter.

4 On the Apple menu, click “Chooser”.

5 Make sure that “AppleTalk” is set to “Active”, and then click the “LaserWriter” icon.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 From the “Select a PostScript Printer” list, click the applicable printer for the printing system, and then click the [Create] button.

The PostScript printer description (PPD) file selection screen appears.

? What should be done if a different PPD file has already been selected?

➔ Click the [Reselect] button, and then click the [Select PPD] button from the screen that is already displayed.

7 Select the applicable PPD file, and then click the [Select] button.

The setting screen for adding options appears.

8 Select the options that are installed on this machine.

9 Click the [OK] button.

The Chooser window appears again.

10 Close the Chooser window.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Uninstalling the printer driver

If it becomes necessary to delete the printer driver, for example, when you want to reinstall the printer driver, follow the procedure below to delete the driver.

Reminder
Quit all running applications that may have started when the Macintosh computer was turned on.

For Mac OS X

1 Open Print Center or Printer Setup Utility, located in Hard Disk\Applications\Utilities.

2 Select the name of the printer to be deleted, and then click the [Delete] button.

The selected printer is deleted.

3 Close the printer list.

4 Drag the following file, which is located at Hard Disk\Library\Printers\PPDs\Contents\Resources\xx.lproj, to the “Trash” icon. (“xx” in “xx.lproj” is a language abbreviation. Select the folder corresponding to the language being used.)

- KONICA MINOLTAxxxxxx xxx

5 Delete the unnecessary files from Library\Printers.
For Mac OS 10.3, drag the “pstokmc450” file, which is located in Library\Printer\KONICAMINOLTA\filter, and the following four files, which are located at Library\Printer\PDEs, to the “Trash” icon.

- KONICAMINOLTAC450\KONICAMINOLTA\Finishing.plugin
- KONICAMINOLTAC450\KONICAMINOLTA\ImageLayout.plugin
- KONICAMINOLTAC450\KONICAMINOLTA\ Security.plugin
- KONICAMINOLTAC450\KONICAMINOLTA\Setup.plugin
- KONICAMINOLTA
  For Mac OS 10.2, drag the following folders, which are located in Library\Printers\PPD Plugins, to the “Trash” icon.
- KONICAMINOLTAC450 Finishing.plugin
- KONICAMINOLTAC450 ImageLayout.plugin
- KONICAMINOLTAC450 Security.plugin
- KONICAMINOLTAC450 Setup.plugin

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 Restart the Macintosh computer.

This completes the uninstallation procedure.

For Mac OS 9.2

1 Drag the KONICAMINOLTAC450UVxxx.ppd file, which is located in Hard Disk\System Folder\Function Enhancer\Printer Description File, to the “Trash” icon.

The related printer driver files are deleted.

2 Restart the Macintosh computer.

This completes the uninstallation procedure.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

2.4 Printing operations

For Windows

Printing is possible when the printer driver is installed and the network settings have been specified. Print jobs are specified from the application software.

Printing operation

1 Open the data in the application, click “File”, and then click “Print”.

2 Check that the printer name has been selected in “Printer Name” or “Select Printer” drop-down list.

- If the desired printer is not selected, click the currently selected printer name, and then select the desired printer.
- The Print dialog box differs depending on the application.

3 Specify the page range and the number of copies to print.

4 Click the [Preferences] button or the [Details] button to change the printer driver settings as necessary.

- By clicking the “Preferences” button or the “Details” button on the Print dialog box, you can specify settings for each model from the printer driver dialog box that appears. For details, refer to “Setting up the PCL driver” on page 3-5, “Setting up the PostScript driver (Windows)” on page 3-39, or “Setting up the PPD driver (Windows)” on page 3-70.
- If the changed settings are not saved in the Print dialog box, the original settings are restored when the application is exited.

5 Click the [Print] button.

- The Data indicator of this machine flashes.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Test printing

Printing is possible when the printer driver is installed and the network settings have been specified. To check that a connection has been made properly, you can print the standard Windows test page. Print a test page from the printer driver Properties dialog box.

1 For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”. For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click “Properties”.

3 Click the General tab, and then click the [Print Test Page] button or the [Print Test] button.

The test page is printed and the confirmation dialog box appears.

4 Check the printout, and then click the [OK] button or the [Yes] button.

Note

If the test page is not printed properly, check that the printer driver has been installed properly and that the network settings have been specified correctly.

For Macintosh

Printing is possible when the printer driver is installed and the network settings have been specified. Print jobs are specified from the application software.

Printing operation

1 Open the data in the application, click “File”, and then click “Print”.

2 Check that the printer name has been selected in the “Printer” drop-down list.

3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print, and then click the [Print] button.

The Data indicator of this machine flashes.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

2.5 Setting up network printing

Overview of network functions

Network functions

By connecting this machine to a network through the Ethernet port, this printing system can be used as a network printer.

This printing system supports 10Base-T and 100Base-TX standards. In addition, the Ethernet interface supports the TCP/IP (LDP/LPR, IPP, SMB), NetBEUI (SMB), IPX/SPX (NetWare), and AppleTalk (EtherTalk) protocols.

Note

When setting up the network, the administrator password is required to enter Administrator mode.
Ask the administrator of this machine for the administrator password.

Features of the network functions

This printing system is equipped with the following network functions to flexibly support various network environments.

- Automatic selection of 10Base-T or 100Base-TX (Fast Ethernet)
- Supports multiple network protocols including TCP/IP, NetBEUI, IPX/SPX, and AppleTalk (EtherTalk)
- Supports SMB printing (Windows printing) from Windows 98SE or Windows Me
- Supports LPD/LPR over TCP/IP from Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000 or Windows XP
- Supports Novell NetWare PServer and RPrinter (NPrinter)
- Supports the Novell NetWare print server functions and supports both bindery mode and Novell Directory Service (NDS)
- Acquires IP address automatically through DHCP

With SMB printing (Windows 98SE/Me)
SMB printing is a printing method that does not require a dedicated print server on computers running Windows 98SE or Windows Me.

With LPR (Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP)
You can print with LPD/LPR using Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, or Windows XP. Windows 98SE and Windows Me cannot be used.

Note

LPR (Line Printer Remote): This print request system can be used under Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, or Windows XP. Enter "Print" as the queue name.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

With NetWare

The Novell NetWare 4.x–6 print server functions are supported.

You can connect this printing system to a network using Novell NetWare 4.x–6 as the network operating system and send print jobs from the client to the print server (network controller). The three modes supported are as follows:

- NPrinter
- PServer
- NDPS

...

Note

For details on the NetWare functions, refer to the NetWare operation manual.

With Macintosh

You can print from your Macintosh computer using AppleTalk.

You can connect this printing system to a print server in an AppleTalk environment and send print jobs from the Macintosh computer to this machine.

Network Connection Methods That Can Be Selected in Each Windows Operating System

The settings that must be specified for network printing are described here. Setting procedures differ depending on the method of network printing used (SMB, LPR, or IPP printing). Select the best method of network printing for your Windows environment.

Network printing from a Windows operating system

	Protocol Used	Windows 98 Second Edition	Windows Me	Windows 2000	Windows XP	Windows NT 4.0	Windows Server 2003
SMB Printing	TCP/IP, NetBEUI	○	○	○	○		○
LPR Printing	TCP/IP		○	○	○	○	○
IPP Printing	TCP/IP		○	○	○		○

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Note

Before setting up network printing, install the printer driver. For details on installing the printer driver, refer to "Installing the printer driver" on page 2-7.

To perform network printing, change the printer port for the installed printer driver to one for a network connection, and then change the settings on this machine as necessary. For an IPP connection, it is necessary to install the printer driver first.

Network printing in a NetWare environment

NetWare Version	Protocol Used	Emulation	Service Mode
NetWare 4.x	IPX	NDS/Bindery	PServer/NPrinter
NetWare 5.x/6	IPX	NDS	PServer
	TCP/IP	NDPS(lpr)	

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setting the IP address for this machine

Use this machine's control panel to assign an IP address to this machine.

Note

When specifying network settings, follow the instructions of the network administrator.

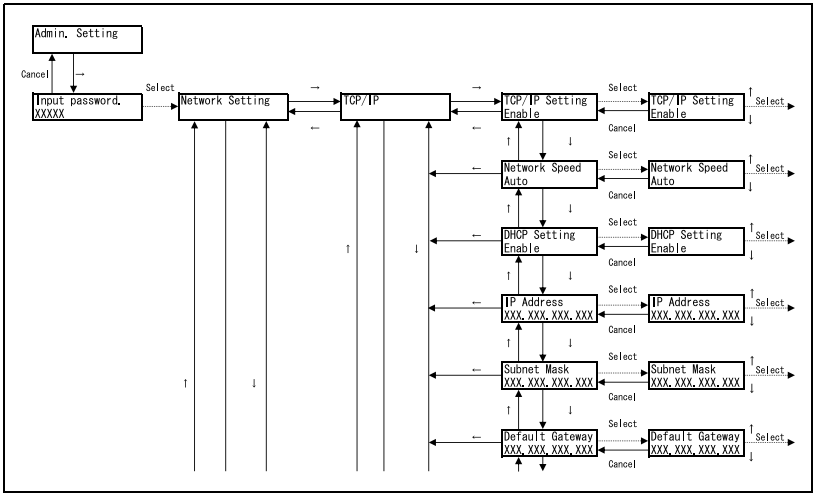
The administrator password is required in order to enter Administrator mode. Ask the administrator of this machine for the administrator password.

Specifying the TCP/IP settings

1. Press the [Select] key on this machine's control panel, touch [▲] or [▼] to display the Admin. Setting screen, and then touch [▶].
2. Enter the administrator password, and then press the [Select] key.
   - To enter the password, touch [▲] or [▼] to select the desired value, and then touch [◀] [▶] to enter the next digit.
3. Touch [▲] or [▼] to display the Network Setting screen, and then touch [▶].
4. Touch [▲] or [▼] to display the TCP/IP screen, and then touch [▶].
5. Specify settings for the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.
   - Touch [▲] or [▼] to display the setting, and then touch [▶] to switch to the setting display. To enter a numeric value, touch [▲] or [▼] to select the desired value, and then touch [▶] to enter the next digit. After entering all digits, press the [Select] key to apply the setting.
   - IP Address: Specify the IP address of this machine.
   - Subnet Mask: Specify the subnet mask connecting to a network.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

– Default Gateway: Specify the default gateway address connecting to a network.



6 To apply the settings, restart this machine (turn it off, then on again).

Turn this machine back on to apply the IP address.

Detail

Although the IP address is entered without using the DHCP server in the procedure described here, it is also possible to automatically assign the IP address from the DHCP server. When "DHCP Setting" is set to "Enable", the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address settings are automatically assigned from the DHCP server on the network, so it is not necessary to assign them manually. However, note the following when setting "DHCP Setting" to "Enable".

Check with the network administrator that the DHCP server exists. If the DHCP server does not exist, be sure to specify settings for "IP Address", "Subnet Mask", and "Default Gateway".

If the settings for the IP address and other items have been assigned using the DHCP server, there is a possibility that they may be automatically changed. When the settings for the IP address and other items are changed, if the IP address has been used to specify a printer on the net-

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

work for printing, there is a possibility that printing may not be possible because this machine cannot communicate with the network.

If "DHCP Setting"" has been set to "Enable", it is recommended that the IP address assigned to this machine be fixed in the DHCP server settings.

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Accessing PageScope Web Connection

Setting the IP address for this machine enables you to access PageScope Web Connection.

Use your Web browser to directly access PageScope Web Connection.

1 Start up the Web browser.

2 In the “Address” bar, enter the IP address for this machine as shown below, and then press the [Enter] key.

http://<IP_address_for_this_machine>/
Example: If the IP address for this machine is 192.168.1.20
http://192.168.1.20/
The initial page of PageScope Web Connection appears.

Detail
For further details on PageScope Web Connection, refer to “Using PageScope Web Connection” on page 9-3.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

SMB printing

You can use SMB printing (Windows printing) to print directly over the Microsoft network from computers running Windows 98SE or Windows Me.

Operations on this machine

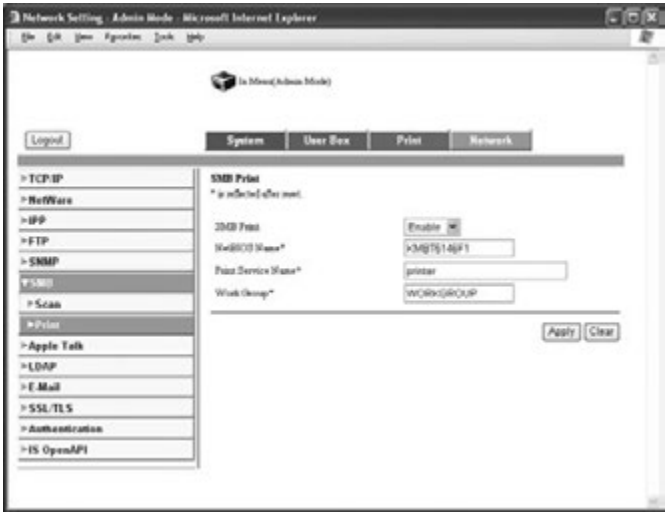
Set the IP address for this machine. For the setting procedure, refer to “Setting the IP address for this machine” on page 2-30. In PageScope Web Connection, specify the settings described below for Windows printing.

1 Start up PageScope Web Connection.

2 Click the [Admin. Mode] button.

3 Enter the administrator password, and log on to Administrator mode.

4 On the Network tab, click “SMB”, and then click “Print” in the submenu that appeared.



5 Specify settings for the following:

- SMB Print: Set whether to use the SMB printing service. Select “Enable” here.
- NetBIOS Name: Specify the NetBIOS name (up to 15 alphanumeric characters).

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

- Printing Service Name: Specify the printing service name (up to 13 alphanumeric characters).
- Work Group: Specify the work group name (up to 15 alphanumeric characters).

6 To apply the settings, restart this machine (turn it off, then on again).

Reminder

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printer driver settings (For Windows 98SE/Me)

1 Click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

2 Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click “Properties”.

3 On the Details tab, click the [Add Port] button.

4 Select “Network”, and then click the [Browse] button. In the network configuration window that appears, select the appropriate printer icon.

Printer driver settings (For Windows 2000/XP/NT 4.0/Server 2003)

1 For Windows 2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”. For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click “Properties”.

3 Click the [Add Port] button on the Ports tab, double-click “Local Port” or select “Local Port” and click the “New Port” button, and then enter “\\<NetBIOS_name>\<printing_service_name>”.

4 Click the [Close] button to apply the setting.

Detail

Enter the same NetBIOS name and printing service name that you entered in PageScope Web Connection. For the setting procedure, refer to “Operations on this machine” on page 2-34.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

LPR printing

The LPR print service is supported as a standard in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows NT 4.0, and Windows Server 2003. TCP/IP is used as the network protocol.

Operations on this machine

Set the IP address for this machine. For the setting procedure, refer to “Setting the IP address for this machine” on page 2-30.

Printer driver settings (For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003)

1. For Windows 2000, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”. For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.
2. Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click “Properties”.
3. On the Ports tab, click the [Add Port] button.
4. In the “Available Printer Ports” list, select “Standard TCP/IP Port”, and then click the [New Port] button.
5. When the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard starts up, click the [Next] button.
6. In the “Name of printer or IP address” box, enter the IP address for this machine, and then click the [Next] button.
7. Select “Custom”, and then click the [Settings] button.
8. Select “LPR”, enter “Print” in the “Queue Name” box, and then click the [OK] button.
9. Click the [Next] button, and then click the [Finish] button to apply the setting.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printer driver settings (For Windows NT 4.0)

1 Click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

2 Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click “Properties”.

3 On the Ports tab, click the [Add Port] button.

4 In the “Available Printer Ports” list, select “LPR Port”, and then click the [New Port] button.

– If “LPR Port” is not in the list, click the [Start] button, point to “Control Panel”, and then click “Network”. Then, on the Service tab, click the [Add] button and install the Microsoft TCP/IP Printing service.

5 In the “Name or address of server providing lpd” box on the Add LPR Compatible Printer dialog box, enter the IP address for this machine.

6 In the “Name of printer or print queue on that server” box, enter “Print”.

7 Click the [OK] button to apply the setting.

IPP printing (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003)

The IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service is supported as a standard in Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003. TCP/IP is used as the network protocol.

Operations on this machine

Set the IP address for this machine. For the setting procedure, refer to “Setting the IP address for this machine” on page 2-30.

Also, specify the IPP printing settings in PageScope Web Connection. (Printing can be performed with the default settings.)

1 Start up PageScope Web Connection.

2 Click the [Admin. Mode] button.

3 Enter the administrator password, and log on to Administrator mode.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

4 On the Network tab, click “IPP”.

5 Specify settings for the following:

- IPP Print: Set whether to perform IPP printing. Select “Enable” here.
- Printer Name: Specify the printer name (up to 127 alphanumeric characters).
- Printer Location: Specify the printer location (up to 127 alphanumeric characters).
- Printer Information: Specify the printer manufacturer details (up to 127 alphanumeric characters).
- Printer URI:The URL of the printer that can be used for IPP printing is displayed.
- Operations Supported: Specify print operations supported by IPP.
- Accept Print Job: Set whether to use the IPP reception function.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Installing the printer driver

For IPP printing, reinstall the printer driver.

1 Insert the Windows printer driver CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

- Konica Minolta PCL driver: User Software CD-ROM
- Konica Minolta PostScript driver: PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

2 For Windows 2000, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

- For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

3 For Windows 2000/Server 2003, double-click the “Add Printer” icon. For Windows XP, click “Add a printer” on the “Printer Tasks” menu.

- The Add Printer Wizard starts up.

4 Click the [Next] button.

5 In the Local or Network Printer dialog box, select “Network printer”, and then click the [Next] button.

6 In the Locate Your Printer dialog box, select “Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet”.

7 In the “URL” field, enter the URL for this machine in the following format, and then click the [Next] button.

- http://<IP_address_for_this_machine>/ipp
  Example: If the IP address for this machine is 192.168.1.20
  http://192.168.1.20/ipp

8 When the confirmation dialog box appears, click the [OK] button.

9 Click the [Have Disk] button.

10 Click the [Browse] button, specify the folder on the CD-ROM that contains the printer driver, and then click the [OK] button.

- Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers\bizhubC450 on the User Software CD-ROM.
- Konica Minolta PostScript driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

11 Check that the printer name is displayed in the “Printers” list, and then click the [Next] button.

12 Select whether to set the printer as the default printer, and then click the [Next] button.

13 Click the [Finish] button to exit the Add Printer Wizard.

Note

Once the settings for the printer have been specified, you can use the printer in the same way as a default local printer. Also, if you set up the printer for sharing in Windows, it can be used as a network printer by other Windows computers over the network.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing with NetWare

The printer controller supports the following environments.

Network printing in a NetWare environment

NetWare Version	Protocol Used	Emulation	Service Mode
NetWare 4.x	IPX	NDS/Bindery	PServer/NPrinter
NetWare 5.x/6	IPX	NDS	PServer
	TCP/IP	NDPS(lpr)	

For remote printer mode with NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation

Note

Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setting up a network

1 From a client computer, log on with Supervisor permissions to access the NetWare server where Pserver is registered.

2 Start up Pconsole.

3 From the “Available Options” list, select “Quick Setup”, and then click the [Enter] button.

4 Enter the appropriate names in the “Printer Server Name”, “Printer Name”, “Print Queue Name”, and “Print Queue Volume” fields, select “Other/Unknown” from the “Printer type” field, and then save the specified settings.

5 Click the [Esc] button to quit Pconsole.

6 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.

7 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select “NetWare” from the Network tab, and then specify the following settings.

- NetWare Print: Select “Enable”.
- Frame Type: Select “Auto”. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.
- Mode: Select “Nprinter/Rprinter”.
- Print Server Name: Specify the print server name created in step 4.
- Print Server Password: Specify only when setting from the NetWare server.
- Print Queue Scan Rate: Specify “1”. (Change as necessary.)
- Bindery/NDS: Select “Bindery”.
- Preferred File Server: Specify the name of the file server that connects to Pserver.

8 Restart this machine (turn it off, then on again).

9 Use the NetWare server console to display the print server screen, and then check that the created printer is shown as “Waiting for Job” for the connected printer (0).

Note

For queue user privileges, the printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and specify settings as necessary.

Reminder

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For print server mode with NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation

Note

Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.

Setting up a network

1. From a client computer, log on with Supervisor permissions to access the NetWare server where Pserver is registered.
2. Start up Pconsole.
3. From the “Available Options” list, select “Quick Setup”, and then click the [Enter] button.
4. Enter the appropriate names in the “Printer Server Name”, “Printer Name”, “Print Queue Name”, and “Print Queue Volume” fields, select “Other/Unknown” from the “Printer type” field, and then save the specified settings.
5. Click the [Esc] button to quit Pconsole.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select “NetWare” from the Network tab, and then specify the following settings.

– NetWare Print: Select “Enable”.
– Frame Type: Select “Auto”. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.)
– Mode: Select “Pserver”.
– Print Server Name: Specify the print server name created in step 4.
– Print Server Password: Specify only when setting from the NetWare server.
– Print Queue Scan Rate: Specify “1”. (Change as necessary.)
– Bindery/NDS: Select “Bindery”.
– Preferred File Server: Specify the name of the file server that connects to Pserver.

7 Restart this machine (turn it off, then on again).

8 Use the NetWare server console to load MONITOR.NLM.

9 Select the connection information and, in the active connection column, check that the created Pserver is connected.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Reminder

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For NetWare 4.x remote printer mode (NDS)

Setting up a network

1 Log on to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.

2 Start up NWadmin.

3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service, and then click “Print Services Quick Setup” on the “Tools” menu.

4 Enter the appropriate names in the “Printer Server Name”, “Printer Name”, “Print Queue Name”, and “Print Queue Volume” fields, select “Other/Unknown” from the “Printer type” field, and then save the specified settings.

5 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select “NetWare” from the Network tab, and then specify the following settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

- NetWare Print: Select “Enable”.
- Frame Type: Select “Auto”. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.)
- Mode: Select “Nprinter/Rprinter”.
- Print Server Name: Specify the print server name created in step 4.
- Print Server Password: Specify only when setting from the NetWare server.
- Print Queue Scan Rate: Specify “1”. (Change as necessary.)
- Bindery/NDS: Select “NDS”.
- Preferred NDS Context Name: Specify the name of the context that connects to Pserver.
- Preferred NDS Tree Name: Specify the name of the tree that Pserver logs on to.
- Printer Number: Specify “255”. (Set the number assigned to the printer (0 to 254) or 255.)

6 Restart this machine (turn it off, then on again).

7 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.

8 Use the NetWare server console to display the print server screen, and then check that “C450P” (the created printer) is shown as “Waiting for Job” for the connected printer (0).

Note

For queue user privileges, the printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and specify settings as necessary.

Reminder

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 print server mode (NDS)

Note

To use the Print Server mode, IPX protocol must be loaded on the NetWare server.

Setting up a network

1 Log on to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.

2 Start up NWadmin.

3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service, and then click “Print Services Quick Setup (non-NDPS)” on the “Tools” menu.

4 Enter the appropriate names in the “Printer Server Name”, “Printer Name”, “Print Queue Name”, and “Print Queue Volume” fields, select “Other/Unknown” from the “Printer type” field, and then click the [Create] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select “NetWare” from the Network tab, and then specify the following settings.

– NetWare Print: Select “Enable”.
– Frame Type: Select “Auto”. (Select the frame type according to the network environment.)
– Mode: Select “Pserver”.
– Print Server Name: Specify the print server name created in step 4.
– Print Server Password: Specify only when setting from the NetWare server.
– Print Queue Scan Rate: Specify “1”. (Change as necessary.)
– Bindery/NDS: Select “NDS”.
– Preferred NDS Context Name: Specify the name of the context that connects to Pserver.
– Preferred NDS Tree Name: Specify the name of the tree that Pserver logs on to.

6 Restart this machine (turn it off, then on again).

7 Use the NetWare server console to load MONITOR.NLM.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8 Select the connection information and, in the active connection column, check that the created Pserver is connected.

Note

For queue user privileges, the printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and specify settings as necessary.

Reminder

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)

Note

Before specifying settings for NDPS, check that the NDPS broker and NDPS manager have been created and loaded.

Also, before performing the following procedure, check that the TCP/IP protocol has been set in the NetWare server, and check that the IP address has been set for this machine and that this machine is on.

Setting up a network

1. Log on to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
2. Start up NWadmin.
3. Right-click the organization or organizational unit container where you will create the printer agent, and then click “NDPS Printer” on the “Create” submenu.
4. In the “NDPS Printer Name” box, enter the printer name.
5. In the “Printer Agent Source” column, select “Create a New Printer Agent”, and then click the [Create] button.
6. Check the printer agent name, and then in the “NDPS Manager Name” box, browse through the NDPS manager names, and register one.
7. In “Gateway Types”, select “Novell Printer Gateway”, and then register it.
8. In the Configure Novell PDS for Printer Agent window, select “(None)” for the printer type and “Novell Port Handler” for the port handler type, and then register the settings.
9. In “Connection type”, select “Remote (LPR on IP)”, and then register it.
10. Enter the IP address set for this machine as the host address, enter “Print” as the printer name, and then click the [Finish] button to register the settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

11 The printer driver registration screen appears. Select “None” for each operating system to complete the registration.

...

Note

For queue user privileges, the printer notification option, assignment of multiple queues, and passwords, refer to the NetWare documentation, and specify settings as necessary.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying client (Windows) settings when using the NetWare server

1 For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”. For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0/Server 2003, double-click the “Add Printer” icon. For Windows XP, click “Add a printer” on the “Printer Tasks” menu.

The Add Printer Wizard starts up.

3 In the port settings, browse the network, and specify the name of the created queue (or NDPS printer name).

4 In the “Printer Model” list, specify the folder on the CD-ROM that contains the operating system and printer driver to be used.

- For Windows 98SE/Me
  Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers\bizhubC450 on the User Software CD-ROM
  PostScript PPD driver: Folder at Driver\PS-PPD on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM
- For Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP/Server 2003
  Konica Minolta PCL driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers\bizhubC450 on the User Software CD-ROM
  Konica Minolta PostScript driver: Folder at Driver\Drivers on the PostScript Printer Driver CD-ROM

5 Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing with Macintosh

Operations on this machine

Set the IP address for this machine. For the setting procedure, refer to “Setting the IP address for this machine” on page 2-30.

In the PageScope Web Connection, specify the settings described below for AppleTalk.

1 Start up PageScope Web Connection.

2 Click the [Admin. Mode] button.

3 Enter the administrator password, and log on to Administrator mode.

4 On the Network tab, click “AppleTalk”.

5 Specify settings for the following:

- AppleTalk: Set whether to use AppleTalk. Select “Enable” here.
- Printer Name: Specify the printer name (up to 13 alphanumeric characters).
- Zone Name: Specify the zone being connected to (up to 31 alphanumeric characters).

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 To apply the settings, restart this machine (turn it off, then on again).

Reminder

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying Macintosh settings

Use the Macintosh computer that is connected to specify the TCP/IP and AppleTalk settings.

Note

For network settings, consult the network administrator.

For Mac OS X

1. From the Apple menu, select “System Preferences”.
2. Click the “Network” icon.
3. From “View”, select “Ethernet built-in”.
4. Click the AppleTalk tab.
5. Check that the “Use AppleTalk” check box is selected.
6. Click the TCP/IP tab.
7. Select the items from “Configure” that correspond to the network settings for the Macintosh computer that is connected to the network, and then set the IP address and subnet mask.
8. Click the close button in the upper-left corner of the dialog box.

   The “Apply Changes?” message appears.
9. Click the [Apply] button.

   The AppleTalk and Ethernet settings are saved.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For Mac OS 9.2

1 From the Apple menu, point to “Control”, and then click “AppleTalk”.

2 From the “Connect via” drop-down list, select “Ethernet”.

3 From the Apple menu, point to “Control Panel”, and then click “TCP/IP”.

4 From the “Connect via” drop-down list, select “Ethernet”.

5 Select the items from “Configure” that correspond to the network settings for the Macintosh computer that is connected to the network, and then set the IP address and subnet mask.

6 Click the close button in the upper-left corner of the dialog box.

The “Save changes to the current configuration?” message appears.

7 Click the [Save] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3 Specifying printer driver settings

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3 Specifying printer driver settings

3.1 Setting the printing functions

The functions of this machine such as sorting and folding can be set in the printer driver when printing from a computer. Depending on the operating system running on the connected computer, the setting procedure of this machine's functions may differ.

For Windows

The functions of this machine that can be used when printing can be specified in the printer driver setup dialog box, which can be displayed from the Printers window (for Windows XP/Server 2003, Printers and Faxes window).

Settings specified in the printer driver setup dialog box displayed using the procedure described below will be applied when printing from any application.

To display the printer driver setup dialog box

1 For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to "Settings", and then click "Printers". For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click "Printers and Faxes".

2 For Windows 98SE/Me, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click "Properties". For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click "Printing Preferences". For Windows NT 4.0, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click "Document Default".

For the settings that can be specified with each printer driver, refer to the following:

- Konica Minolta PCL Driver: "Setting up the PCL driver" on page 3-5
- Konica Minolta PostScript Driver: "Setting up the PostScript driver (Windows)" on page 3-39
- PostScript PPD Driver: "Setting up the PPD driver (Windows)" on page 3-70

To specify custom settings, click "Print" in the application, and then click the [Preferences] button on the Print dialog box. The settings specified on the Print dialog box apply only to the current file.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

For Macintosh

The functions of this machine that can be used when printing can be specified on the Print dialog box or the Page Setup dialog box.
The settings can only be applied while using the application. When the application is exited, the settings return to the default settings.

To display the Print dialog box
Open the data in the application, click “File”, and then click “Print”.

To display the Page Setup dialog box
Open the data in the application, click “File”, and then click “Page Setup” or “Paper Setup”.

For the settings that can be specified with each printer driver, refer to the following:

- OS X: “Setting up the PPD driver (Mac OS X)” on page 3-93
- OS 9.2: “Setting up the PPD driver (Mac OS 9.2)” on page 3-78

Note

The contents of the Print dialog box and the Page Setup dialog box may differ.

Depending on the application, the Page Setup dialog box can be displayed by selecting “Paper Setup”, then “Options” from the “File” menu.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3.2 Setting up the PCL driver

Selecting the printer

Before printing, specify the model name for this machine.

Prerequisite

If the model name for this machine is not specified from the Option tab, the appropriate printer driver functions cannot be used. Be sure to specify the settings before printing.

1 For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 Right-click the icon for the installed printer, and then click “Properties”.

3 Click the Option tab.

4 From the “Model” drop-down list, select “C450P”.

Settings

Common settings

The following describes the common settings and buttons that are displayed on all tabs.

Common setting items

Button	Function
OK	Click this button to close the dialog box and apply any settings that have been changed.
Cancel	Click this button to cancel any settings that have been changed and close the dialog box.
Help	Click this button to display the help for each item on the currently displayed dialog box.
Save/Restore Setting	Click this button to save the current settings and to view them at a later time.
Restore Defaults	Click this button to return the settings to their defaults, which were selected when the driver was installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Button	Function
View	When “Paper” is selected, a preview of the page layout as specified in the current settings is displayed and a preview image of the print job can be checked. When the “Printer” is selected, a printer figure is displayed showing any options, such as the paper tray, that are installed on this machine. Paper Printer

Note

To enable any installed options, you must specify the Option settings. For details, refer to “Specifying the Option tab settings” on page 3-34.

Setup tab

Item	Function
Paper	Specifies the orientation, paper size, paper source, and paper type.
Binding	Specifies the folding format such as the binding position, double-sided printing, booklet printing, printing multiple pages on one page, file margin, stapling, or hole punching.
Output	Specifies the output format such as the output method, number of copies, exit tray, collating, or offset.

Per Page Setting tab

Item	Function
Front Cover Page	Attaches a front cover page.
Back Cover Page	Attaches a back cover page.
Per Page Setting	Specifies the paper to be inserted into a print document.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Overlay tab

Item	Function
Overlay	Specifies overlay printing.

Watermark tab

Item	Function
Watermark	Prints a watermark (text stamp) on the document being printed.
Distribution Number Stamping	Prints the number of the copy.

Quality tab

Item	Function
Select Color	Specifies the color for printing.
Original Image Type	Specifies the contents of the original document. Prints with a quality suitable for the original document.
Quality Adjustment	Adjusts the image quality. You can select “Simple” to adjust entire documents and “Detailed” to adjust the characters, photos, and charts of each document.
Glossy Mode	Prints with a glossy finish.
Pattern	Selects the print pattern.

Font tab

Item	Function
Use Printer Fonts	Selects whether to use TrueType fonts or the printer fonts when printing.
Download Font Format	Selects whether the fonts are downloaded to the printer as bitmap or outline.

FAX tab

This tab is not used on this machine.

Version tab

Item	Function
Version	Displays the version of the printer driver.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Option tab

Item	Function
Option	Specifies the options that are installed on this machine.
Option Information	Automatically specifies the printer driver option settings.

Note

To display the Option tab in Windows 2000/XP/NT 4.0/Server 2003, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click "Properties".

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Setup tab settings

Printing to suit the paper size

You can enlarge or reduce documents created when printing to match the output paper size.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 From the “Original Size” and “Output Size” drop-down lists, select the desired settings.

– You can also specify any enlargement or reduction ratio in the “Zoom” box.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Saving custom sizes

A custom size can be specified and saved in advance as described below.

1 From the “Output Size” drop-down list, select “Custom Size Settings”. The Custom Size Settings dialog box appears.

2 Specify settings for the following:

- List of Custom Sizes: Select the size for the custom size being set.
- Custom Size Name: Input the name of the custom size being registered.
- Size: Specify the width and length of the custom size according to the selected measurement units.

3 Click the [OK] button.

Note

The settings in the Custom Size Settings dialog box can be specified only from the Printing Preferences dialog box, opened from the Printers window (or Printers and Faxes window in Windows XP/Server 2003).

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting the paper source

When changing the paper type, you can specify it for a paper tray and select the paper tray according to the desired paper type.

1 Click the Setup tab.

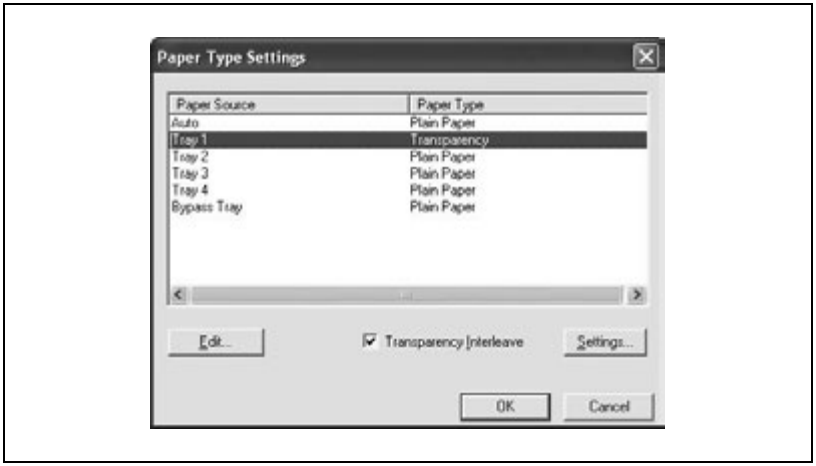
2 From the “Paper Source” drop-down list, select the paper tray that contains the paper to be used.

Assigning a paper type

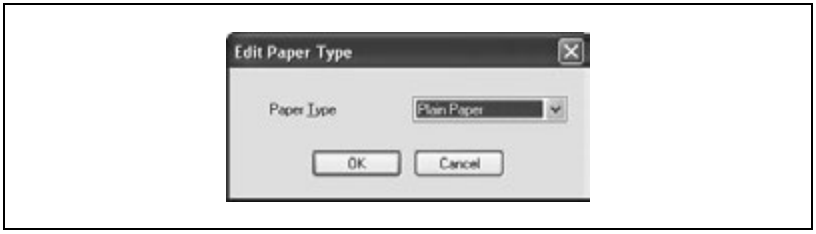
Follow the procedure described below to assign a paper type to a paper tray.

1 Click the [Paper Type Settings] button.

2 Select the “Paper Source” being changed, and then click the [Edit] button.



3 Select the desired setting from the “Paper Type” drop-down list, and then click the [OK] button.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

– If “Transparency” is selected as the paper type, you can specify transparency interleaving.
– When the “Transparency Interleave” check box is selected, the Transparency Interleave Settings dialog box appears, allowing you to select the source of the interleaf paper.
– The Transparency Interleave Settings dialog box can also be displayed by clicking the [Settings] button.

Specifying Double-sided/Booklet printing

You can print a document onto both sides of a page or in a booklet format (two facing pages). This comes in handy when you want to bind multiple-page documents.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 From the “Print Type” drop-down list, select “Double-sided” or “Booklet”.

Note

The binding orientation can be specified from the “Binding Position” drop-down list.

When optional Finisher FS-603 is installed and “Booklet” is specified, you can specify “Center Binding” for binding in the center of a page.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing multiple pages on one page (N in 1)

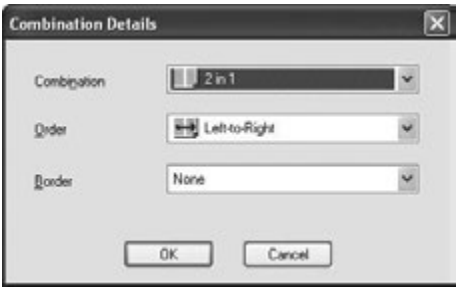
You can print multiple document pages on one page. This comes in handy when you want to reduce the number of output pages.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 Select the “Combination” check box.

3 From the “Combination” drop-down list, select the number of pages to be printed on one page.

– To change the border line and printing order settings, select “Details”, and then change the settings in the dialog box that appears.



...

Note

When printing a job that contains pages of different sizes and orientations, images may be missing or overlapping when the document is printed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setting the file margin

File margins are added to the document before it is printed.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 Select the “File Margin” check box.

3 To set the width of the file margin, click the [Details] button, and then specify the desired settings in the File Margin Details dialog box that appears.

– Front Side/Back Side: Sets the file margin values. By clearing the “Save Value for Front and Back Sides” check box, you can specify separate values for the front and back sides.
– Shift Mode: Selects the printing process for the document.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Stapling

Multiple-page documents can be stapled.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 Select the “Staple” check box.

3 From the drop-down list, select the number of staples and the stapling position.

Note

The staple function is available only when optional Finisher FS-507 or FS-603 is installed.

Note

Depending on the selected Binding Position setting, different stapling positions are available.

Number of pages that can be stapled when FS-507 is installed: Up to 50 pages on A4 ◪ or smaller plain paper, and up to 25 pages on B4 or larger paper. Number of pages that can be stapled when FS-603 is installed: Up to 50 pages of A4 ◪ or smaller plain paper, and up to 25 pages on B4 or larger paper.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Hole punching

Holes can be punched into the printed document.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 Select the “Hole-Punch” check box.

3 From the drop-down list, select “4 Holes” as the number of punched holes.

Note

The hole punch function is available only when the optional Finisher FS-507 or FS-603 is installed. When using the optional Finisher FS-603, the punch kit must be installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting the output method

Not only can you print directly, but you can select “Secured Print”, which requires a password to print, or “Save in User Box”, which saves documents in the HDD.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 From the “Output Method” drop-down list, select the output method.

- Print: Select this setting to print immediately.
- Secured Print: Select this setting to save the document to be printed in the secured box of this machine. In order to print, you will be required to enter the user ID and password from this machine’s control panel. Select this setting when printing highly confidential documents.
- Save in User Box: Select this setting to save the document to be printed in a box on this machine.
- Save in User Box and Print: Select this setting to save the document in a box and print it at the same time.
- Proof and Print: Select this setting to temporarily stop printing after part of the document has been printed. Select this setting to avoid misprinting large print jobs.

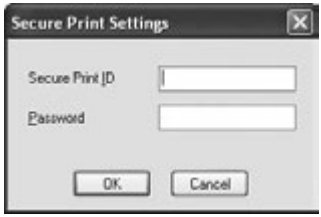
Note

The secured printing and box functions are only available when an optional hard disk is installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Secured Printing

If “Secured Print” was selected, enter the secure print ID and password in the dialog box that appeared.



Detail

To print the document, enter the secure print ID and password on this machine’s control panel. For details, refer to “Managing print jobs” on page 9-17.

Save in User Box

When “Save in User Box” or “Save in User Box and Print” is selected, specify the file name and user box number in the dialog box that appears for entering the file name and user box number.

Detail

To print the document, enter the box number and password on this machine’s control panel. For details, refer to “Managing print jobs” on page 9-17.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Proof and Printing

When a print job is sent, this machine stops printing temporarily after part of the document has been printed. The remaining print job is stored in this machine as a print job. When printing multiple copies, you can print the remaining part of the print job after checking the print results.

Detail

To print the document, select "Held Jobs" from this machine's control panel. For details, refer to "Managing print jobs" on page 9-17.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying Account Track settings

If account track settings have been specified on this machine, you must enter an account password in order to print a job.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 Click the [User Authentication/Account Track] button.

3 Select the “Account Track” check box, and then enter the department name and password.

– A default password can be registered and used rather than entering a password for each job.

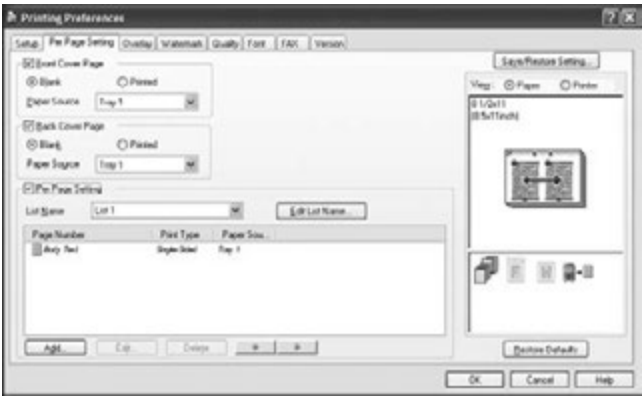
4 Click the [OK] button.

Note

Printing is not possible if a print job is sent using an access code that is not registered with the account track settings of the machine or if a job is sent without the “Account Track” check box selected. The account track setting on the machine can be set to “PageScope Data Administrator”.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Per Page Setting tab settings



Printing documents with a front cover/back cover

1. Click the Per Page Setting tab.
2. Select the “Front Cover Page” and “Back Cover Page” check boxes.
3. To print on the front cover and back cover, select “Printed”. To only add a blank page, select “Blank”.
4. Select the paper tray loaded with the paper for the front cover and back cover.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing multiple pages

The “Per Page Setting” function comes in handy when you want to change the paper tray during a print job when printing multiple pages.

1 Click the Per Page Setting tab.

2 Select the “Per Page Setting” check box.

3 From the “List Name” drop-down list, select the name of the desired list.

– When changing the list name, click the [Edit List Name] button after selecting the list name, and then apply the settings on the dialog box that appears.

4 Click the [Add] button, and then specify the page number, print type, and paper source in the dialog box that appears.

...

Note

For an existing list, click the [Edit] button to change the selected page settings, or click the [Delete] button to delete them.

Click [▲] or [▼] to change the page number starting with the smallest page number.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Overlay tab settings

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing different original documents together (Overlay)

An original document can be printed on top of form data that was created separately. This function is handy for fax cover letters and form letters.

1 Create the print data using any application.

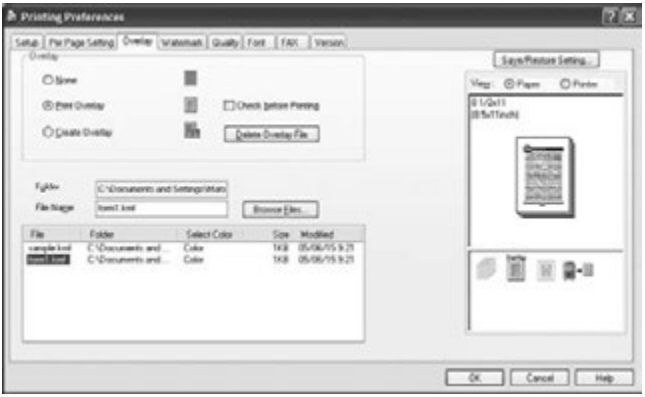
2 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

3 Select the name of the printer, and then click the [Preferences] button or the [Details] button.

4 Click the Overlay tab.

5 Select “Print Overlay”.

6 From the list, select the form that you want to print.



7 Select the file name, and then click the [OK] button.

The Print dialog box appears again.

8 Click the [OK] button.

Overlay printing is performed.

Detail

You must register forms to be printed in advance. For details, refer to “Editing forms” on page 3-26.

пятый партнер копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Editing forms

To use forms, the data for using forms must be registered in advance. To register a form, select “Create Overlay”, and then specify the document that you want to register.

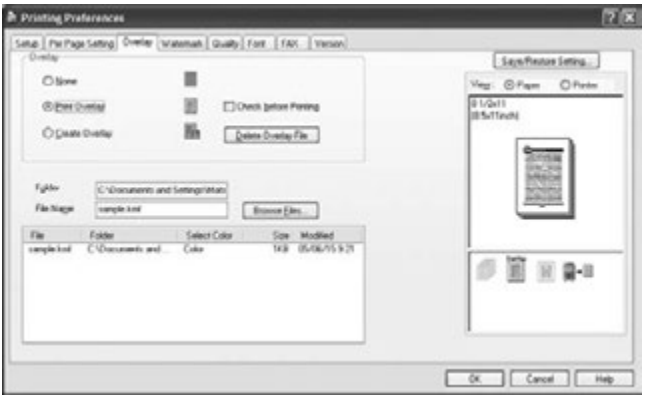
1 Create the form data using any application.

2 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

3 Select the name of the printer, and then click the [Preferences] button or the [Details] button.

4 Click the Overlay tab.

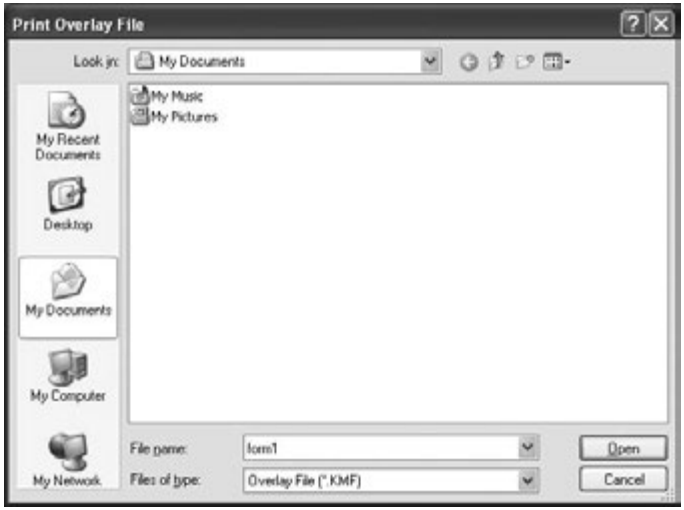
5 Select “Create Overlay”.



6 Click the [Browse Files] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

7 Specify the storage location for the form data, and then enter the file name in the “File Name” box.



8 Click the [Open] button.

9 Select the file name, and then click the [OK] button.

The Print dialog box appears again.

10 Click the [OK] button.

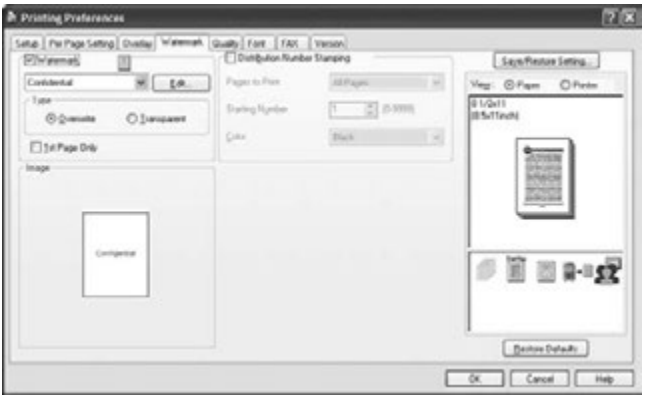
– Instead of executing a print job, the form data is saved. The file extension is “.kmf”.

Note

From the Overlay tab, the selected form data can be deleted by clicking the [Delete Overlay File] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Watermark tab settings



Printing a watermark

You can print specific text in the background as a watermark.

1 Click the Watermark tab.

2 Select the “Watermark” check box.

3 From the drop-down list, select the watermark that you want to print.

4 Specify the desired settings for “Type” and “1st Page Only”.

- Overwrite: The background of the watermark is printed in white.
- Transparent: The background of the watermark is transparent.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Editing a watermark

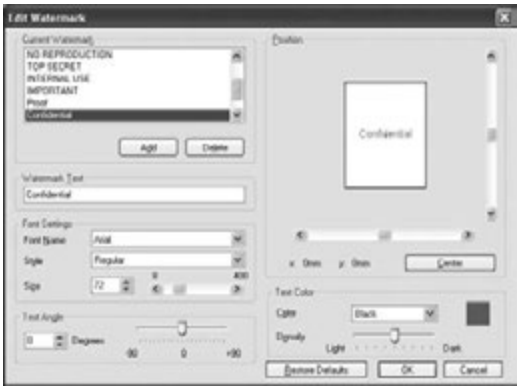
You can change the fonts and position of the watermark, and you can register a new watermark.

1 Click the Watermark tab.

2 Select the “Watermark” check box.

3 Click the [Edit] button.

4 Specify settings for the following:



- [Add]: Click to enter a new watermark in the watermark text box.
- [Delete]: Click to delete the selected watermark.
- Watermark Text: Enter the watermark text.
- Font Settings: Specify the font and character size.
- Text Angle: Specify the watermark print angle.
- Position: Use the horizontal and vertical scroll bars to specify the watermark position.
- Text Color: Specify the watermark text color.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing the document number

When printing multiple copies, you can print the number of each document.

1 Click the Watermark tab.

2 Select the “Distribution Number Stamping” check box.

3 Specify settings for the following:

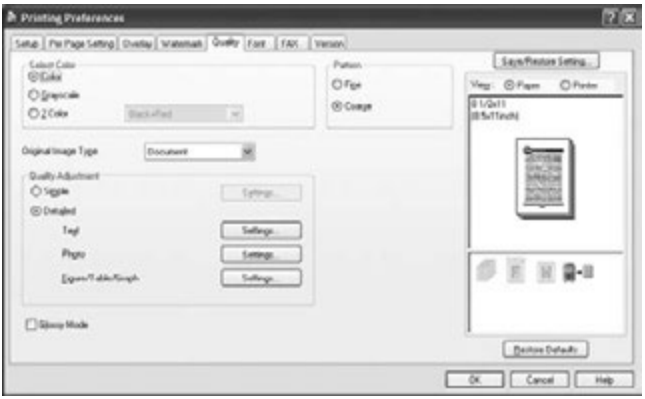
- Pages to Print: Specify the pages where the numbering is to be printed.
- Starting Number: Specify the starting number.
- Color: Specify the color of the number to be printed.

Note

The “Numbering” check box is not available if the “Collate” check box is not selected on the Setup tab.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Quality tab settings



Quality tab parameters

Item	Function
Select Color	Select the color for printing. Color: Select this setting to print in color. Grayscale: Select this setting to print in grayscale. 2 Color: Select this setting to print the two colors selected from the drop-down list.
Original Image Type	Select the contents of the original document to print with a quality suitable for the original document. Document: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for documents containing mostly text. Photo: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for photos. DTP: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for documents produced using a DTP application. WEB: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for Web page printing. CAD: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for CAD data printing.
Quality Adjustment	Adjust the image quality. Simple: Select this setting to adjust the entire document. Detailed: Select this setting to separately adjust the text, photos, and charts in the document.
Glossy Mode	Select this check box to print using a glossy finish.
Pattern	Select the print pattern.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Changing the settings

1 Click the Quality tab.

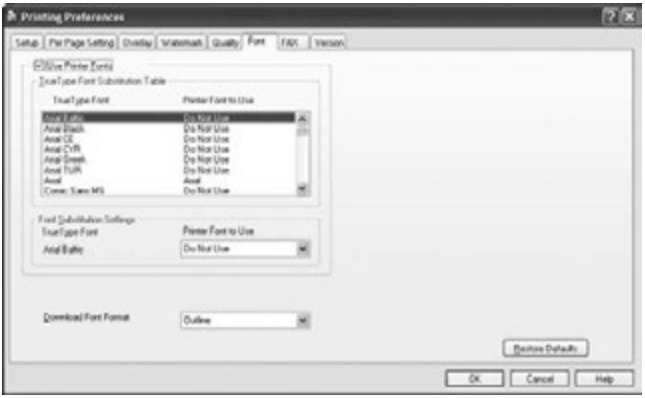
2 Specify each setting.

To adjust the quality, select “Simple” or “Detailed”, and then click the [Settings] button. In the Quality Adjustment Settings dialog box that appears, specify the brightness and color balance.

To adjust the quality, select “Detailed”, and then click the [Settings] button beside “Figure/Table/Graph”. In the Quality Adjustment Settings dialog box that appears, you can specify the color settings and screen/smoothing settings, and the corresponding text or photo settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Font tab settings



You can replace the TrueType fonts used in Windows with the printer fonts of this machine.

Replacing fonts

1 Click the Font tab.

2 Select the “Use Printer Fonts” check box.

3 Select the TrueType font that you want to replace.

4 From the “Printer Font to Use” drop-down list, select the printer font to replace the TrueType font.

5 Click the [OK] button.

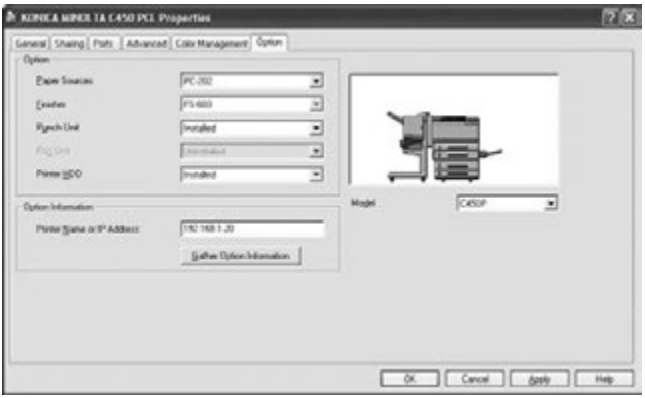
Note

Using the printer fonts will shorten the printing time, however, there may be a difference in the screen display and the print results.

When using TrueType fonts, select from the “Download Font Format” drop-down list the font type to be downloaded to the printer.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Option tab settings



You can specify the options installed on this machine so that they can be used from the printer driver.

Note

If the installed options are not set from the Option tab, the for the function option cannot be used with the printer driver. When installing options, be sure to specify the correct settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting options

1 For Windows 98SE/Me/2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

– For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 Right-click the printer icon, and then click “Properties”.

3 Click the Option tab.

4 Select the installed options from the drop-down list.

Note

To automatically set the installed options, enter the printer name or IP address of this machine in the “Printer Name or IP Address” box under “Option Information”, and then click the [Gather Option Information] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Saving the driver settings

With PCL drivers, you can save the new settings of the driver and recall them as necessary.

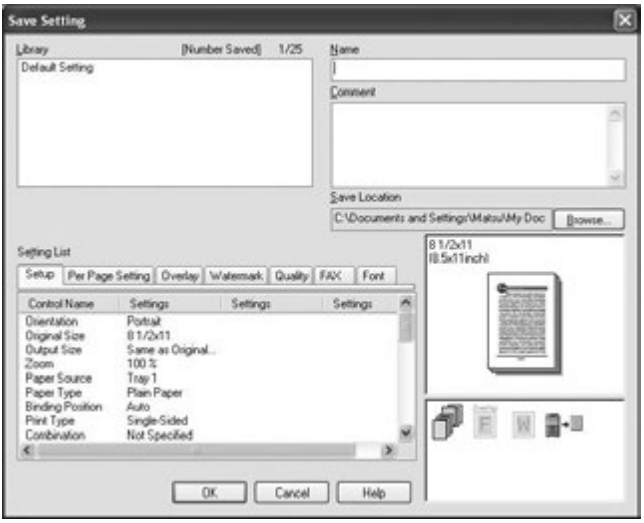
To save the driver settings

1 Change the driver settings in the Setup tab and the Per Page Setting tab.

2 Click the [Save/Restore Setting] button, and then select “Save Current Setting”.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3 Enter the file name in the “Name” text box.



4 Enter a message in the “Comment” text box as necessary.

5 Specify a folder in the “Save Location” box, and then click the [OK] button.

The settings are registered in a library.

Note

The file extension is “.ksf”.

You can save up to 25 sets of settings in the library.

Up to 40 characters can be entered in the “Name” text box. In Windows 98SE/Me, you can enter up to 40 characters.

Up to 512 characters can be entered in the “Comment” text box. In Windows 98SE/Me, you can enter up to 512 characters.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Restoring the settings

1 Click the [Save/Restore Setting] button on the Printing Preferences dialog box, and then select “Restore Saved Settings”.

2 From the “Library” list, select the desired settings file.

3 Click the [OK] button.

The settings are recalled and displayed in the Printing Preferences dialog box.

Deleting the settings

1 Click the [Save/Restore Setting] button on the Printing Preferences dialog box, and then select “Edit Library”.

2 From the “Library” list, select the desired settings file to be deleted.

3 Click the [Delete] button.

...

Note

Even if the settings file is deleted from the “Library” list, it will remain on the hard disk of your computer. By specifying the file name in “Save Setting File in Library”, you can save it in the “Library” list.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3.3 Setting up the PostScript driver (Windows)

Selecting the printer

Before printing, specify the model name for this machine.

Prerequisite

If the model name for this machine is not specified from the Option tab, the appropriate printer driver functions cannot be used. Be sure to specify the settings before printing.

1 For Windows 2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 Right-click the icon for the installed printer, and then click “Properties”.

3 Click the Option tab.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

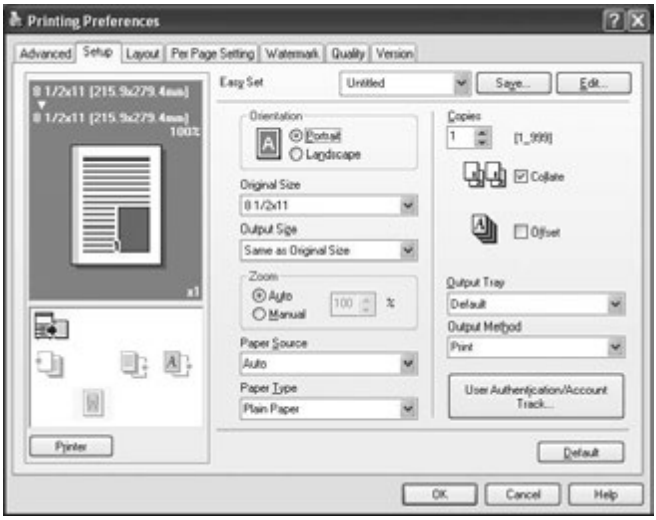
4 Select “Model” from the “Option” list, and then select “C450P” from the “Setting” drop-down list.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Settings

Common settings

The following describes the common settings and buttons that are displayed on all tabs.



Common setting items

Button	Function
OK	Click this button to close the dialog box and apply any settings that have been changed.
Cancel	Click this button to cancel any settings that have been changed and close the dialog box.
Help	Click this button to display the help for each item on the currently displayed dialog box.
Save	Click this button to save the current settings and to view them at a later time.
Edit	Click this button to change the saved settings.
Defaults	Click this button to return the settings to their defaults, which were selected when the driver was installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Button	Function
View	When the “Paper” button is clicked, a preview of the page layout as specified in the current settings is displayed and a preview image of the print job can be checked. When the “Printer” button is clicked, a printer figure is displayed showing any options, such as the paper tray, that are installed on this machine. Paper Printer

Detail

To enable any installed options, you must specify the Option settings. For details, refer to “Specifying the Option tab settings” on page 3-65.

Setup tab

Item	Function
Orientation	Specifies the orientation of the image being printed on the paper.
Original Size	Specifies the size of the original document.
Output Size	Specifies the output paper size. Automatically enlarges or reduces when the Original Size setting is changed.
Zoom	Specifies the enlargement and reduction ratio.
Paper Source	Selects the paper source for printing.
Paper Type	Selects the paper type for printing.
Copies	Specifies the number of copies to print.
Collate	Specifies whether to print multiple copies in sets.
Offset	When printing multiple copies, shifts the output position of each set.
Output Tray	Selects the tray where the printed pages are fed to.
Output Method	Specifies output methods, such as “Secured Print” and “Save in User Box”.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Item	Function
User Authentication/Account Track	Specifies the account name, if account track settings have been applied, and password and box name for “Secured Print” and “Save in User Box”.

Layout tab

Item	Function
Combination	You can print multiple document pages on one page. Details can be specified by clicking the [Combination Details] button.
Rotate 180	Prints the image rotated 180°.
Double Sides	Specifies double-sided printing.
Staple	Specifies stapling.
Center Staple and Fold	Specifies the folding settings.
Hole-Punch	Specifies hole punching.
Binding Position	Specifies the binding position.

Per Page Setting tab

Item	Function
Front Cover Page	Attaches a front cover page.
Paper Source	Selects the paper tray for the front cover.
Back Cover Page	Attaches a back cover page.
Paper Source	Selects the paper tray for the back cover.
Transparency Interleave	Outputs and inserts interleafs when printing overhead projector transparencies.
Paper Source	Selects the paper tray for the transparency interleaves.

Watermark tab

Item	Function
Watermark	Prints a watermark (text stamp) on the page being printed. Watermarks can be added, changed, or deleted.
Transparent	Prints the watermark with a transparent background.
1st Page Only	Prints the watermark on the first page only.
Repeat	Prints several watermarks on a single page.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Quality tab

Item	Function
Original Image Type	Specifies the contents of the original document. Prints with a quality suitable for the original document.
Select Color	Specifies the color for printing.
Quality Adjustment	Adjusts the image quality. You can select “Simple” to adjust entire documents and “Detailed” to adjust the characters, photos, and charts of each document.
Glossy Mode	Prints with a glossy finish.
Font Settings	Selects whether to use TrueType fonts or the printer fonts when printing.

Details tab

Item	Function
Detailed Print Function	Specifies whether to enable detailed print functions (booklet).
PostScript Output Options	Specifies the PostScript file output format.
PostScript Error Handler Transmission	Specifies whether to print an error report when a PostScript error occurs.
Horizontal Reverse Printing	Reverses horizontally, then prints.
PostScript Pass Through	Allows applications to print directly without using a printer driver.

Device Settings tab

Item	Function
Font Substitute List	Specifies the replacement of TrueType fonts with printer fonts.
Usable PostScript Memory	Specifies the usable PostScript memory size.
Output Protocol	Specifies the protocol for transmitting to the printer.
Send CTRL-D Before Job	Specifies whether to reset the printer before printing.
Send CTRL-D After Job	Specifies whether to reset the printer after printing.
Convert gray text to PostScript gray	Converts gray text to PostScript gray.
Convert gray graphics to PostScript gray	Specifies whether to convert gray graphics in a document to PostScript gray.
Convert Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts	Specifies whether to convert the Euro currency symbol in a document to PostScript fonts.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Item	Function
Job Timeout	Stops printing when a print job is not completed within the specified time.
Print Queue Timeout	Stops printing when the printer does not receive data within the specified time from when the job was sent.
Minimum Font Size Downloaded as Outline	Specifies the minimum font size (pixels) when downloading TrueType fonts as outline fonts. Fonts smaller than the minimum specified size are downloaded as bitmap fonts.
Maximum Font Size Downloaded as Bitmap	Specifies the maximum font size (pixels) when downloading TrueType fonts as bitmap fonts. Fonts larger than the maximum specified size are downloaded as outline fonts.

Note

To display the Device Settings tab in Windows 2000/XP/NT 4.0/Server 2003, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click "Properties".

Option tab

Item	Function
Device Options	Specifies the options that are installed on this machine.
Get Option Information	Communicates with this machine and reads the status of the installed options.
PageScope Web Connection	Starts up PageScope Web Connection.

Note

To display the Option tab in Windows 2000/XP/NT 4.0/Server 2003, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click "Properties".

You cannot use the "Get Option Information" function if you are not connected to or able to communicate with this machine.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Default Settings tab

Item	Function
Displays message when a prohibited action occurs.	Displays a message when you want to perform a function that cannot be set when the printer is being used.
Use the Server Property Paper	Uses the added registered paper in [Server Properties].

Note

To display the Default Settings tab in Windows 2000/XP/NT 4.0/Server 2003, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and then click "Properties".

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Setup tab settings

Printing to suit the paper size

You can enlarge or reduce documents created when printing to match the output paper size.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 From the “Original Size” and “Output Size” drop-down lists, select the desired settings.

– You can also specify any enlargement or reduction ratio in the “Zoom” box.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Saving custom sizes

A custom size can be specified and saved in advance as described below.

1 From the “Original Size” and “Output Size” drop-down lists, select “Custom Size Settings”.

2 Specify settings for the following:

– Size: Specify the width and length of the custom size according to the selected measurement units.

3 Click the [OK] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting the output method

Not only can you print directly, but you can select “Secured Print”, which requires a password to print, or “Save in User Box”, which saves documents in the HDD.

1 Click the Setup tab.

2 From the “Output Method” drop-down list, select the output method.

- Print: Select this setting to print immediately.
- Secured Print: Select this setting to save the document to be printed in the secured box of this machine. In order to print, you will be required to enter the user ID and password from this machine’s control panel. Select this setting when printing highly confidential documents. (Up to 100 documents)
- Save in User Box: Select this setting to save the document to be printed in a box on this machine.
- Save in User Box and Print: Select this setting to save the document in a box and print it at the same time.
- Proof and Print: Select this setting to temporarily stop printing after part of the document has been printed. Select this setting to avoid misprinting large print jobs.

Note

The secured printing and box functions are only available when an optional hard disk is installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Secured printing

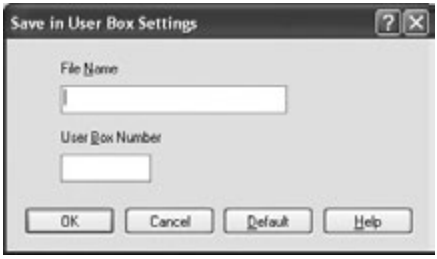
If “Secured Print” was selected, enter the secure print ID and password in the dialog box that appeared.

Detail

To print the document, enter the secure print ID and password on this machine’s control panel. For details, refer to “Managing print jobs” on page 9-17.

Save in User Box

When “Save in User Box” or “Save in User Box and Print” is selected, specify the file name and user box number in the dialog box that appears for entering the file name and user box number.



Detail

To print the document, enter the user box number and password on this machine’s control panel. For details, refer to “Managing print jobs” on page 9-17.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Proof and printing

When a print job is sent, this machine stops printing temporarily after part of the document has been printed. The remaining print job is stored in this machine as a print job. When printing multiple copies, you can print the remaining part of the print job after checking the print results.

Detail

To print the document, select “Held Jobs” from this machine’s control panel. For details, refer to “Managing print jobs” on page 9-17.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying Account Track settings

If account track settings have been specified on this machine, you must enter an account password in order to print a job.

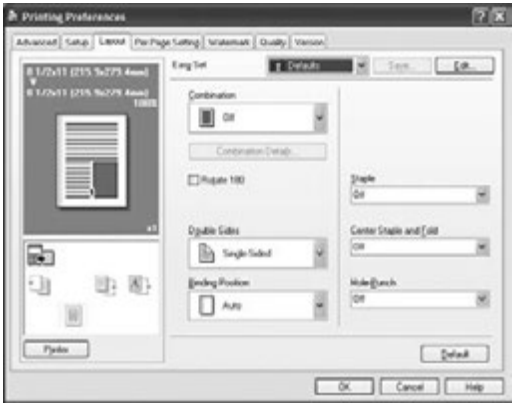
1 Click the Setup tab.

2 Click the [User Authentication/Account Track] button.

3 Select the “Account Track” check box, and then enter the department name and password.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Layout tab settings



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

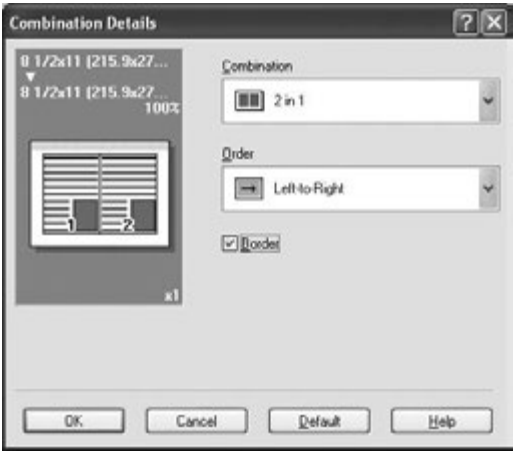
Printing multiple pages on one page (N in 1)

You can print multiple document pages on one page. You can also specify the “Booklet” setting to fold the printouts in two to make a booklet.

1 Click the Layout tab.

2 From the “Combination” drop-down list, select the number of pages to be printed on one page.

– To change the border line and printing order settings, click the [Combination Details], and then change the settings in the dialog box that appears.



Note

When printing a job that contains pages of different sizes and orientations, images may be missing or overlapping when the document is printed.

When optional Finisher FS-603 is installed and “Booklet” is specified, you can specify “Center Binding” for binding in the center of a page.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Double-sided printing

You can print a document onto both sides of a page. This comes in handy when you want to bind multiple-page documents.

1 Click the Layout tab.

2 From the “Double Sides” drop-down list, select “Double-Sided”.

Note
The binding orientation can be specified from the “Binding Position” drop-down list.

Setting the file margin

File margins are added to the document before it is printed.

1 Click the Layout tab.

2 From the “Binding Position” drop-down list, select the position of the binding margin.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Stapling

Multiple-page documents can be stapled.

1 Click the Layout tab.

2 From the “Staple” drop-down list, specify the number of staples and the stapling position.

Note

The staple function is available only when optional Finisher FS-507 or FS-603 is installed.

Note

Depending on the selected Binding Position setting, different stapling positions are available.

Number of pages that can be stapled when FS-507 is installed: Up to 50 pages on A4 ◪ or smaller plain paper, and up to 25 pages on B4 or larger paper. Number of pages that can be stapled when FS-603 is installed: Up to 50 pages of A4 ◪ or smaller plain paper, and up to 25 pages on B4 or larger paper.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Hole punching

Holes can be punched into the printed document.

1 Click the Layout tab.

2 From the “Hole-Punch” drop-down list, select “4 Holes” as the number of punched holes.

Note

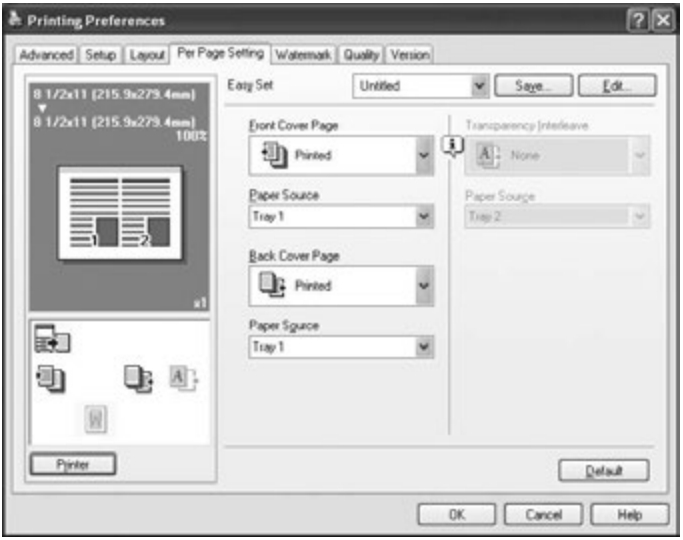
The hole punch function is available only when optional Finisher FS-507 or FS-603 is installed. When using the optional Finisher FS-603, the punch kit must be installed.

Note

Depending on the selected Binding Position setting, different hole punching positions are available.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Per Page Setting tab settings



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing documents with a front cover/back cover

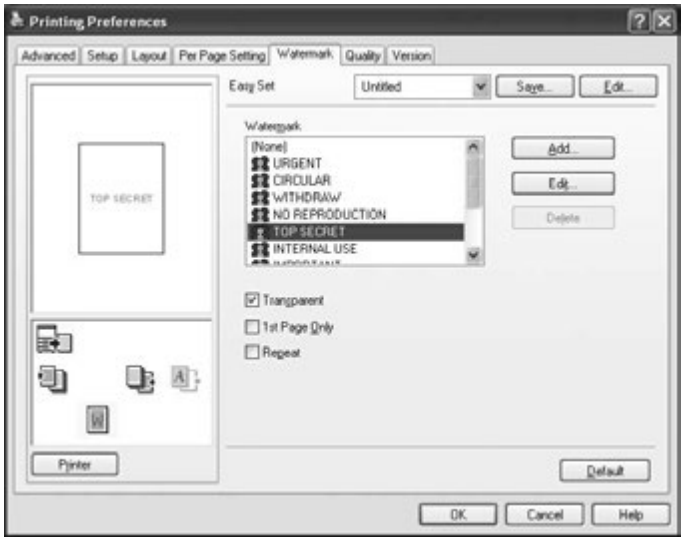
1 Click the Per Page Setting tab.

2 From the “Front Cover Page” and “Back Cover Page” drop-down lists, select the desired printing settings.

– To print on the front cover and back cover, select “Printed”. To only add a blank page, select “Blank”.

3 Select the paper tray that contains the loaded paper for the front cover and back cover.

Specifying the Watermark tab settings



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing a watermark

You can print specific text in the background as a watermark.

1 Click the Watermark tab.

2 From the drop-down list, select the watermark that you want to print.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Transparent: The background of the watermark is transparent.
- 1st Page Only: Prints the watermark only on the first page.
- Repeat: Prints several watermarks on one page.

Note

If “Booklet” was specified in the “Combination” drop-down list, the watermark is not printed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Editing a watermark

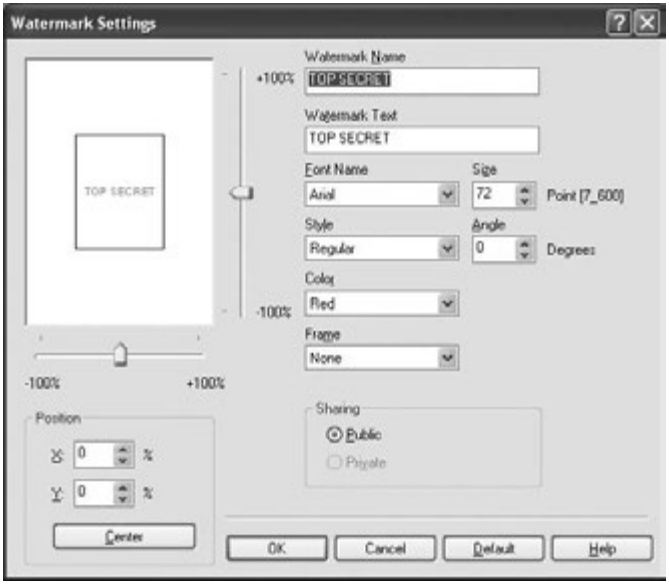
You can change the fonts and position of the watermark, and you can register a new watermark.

1 Click the Watermark tab.

2 To create a watermark, click the [Add] button.

– To change a watermark, select the watermark to be changed, and then click the [Edit] button.

3 Specify settings for the following:



– Watermark Name: Specify the watermark name being registered.
– Watermark Text: Enter the watermark text.
– Font Name, Size, Style, Angle, Color, and Frame: Specify the font, character size, style, text angle, color, and frame of the watermark.
– Position: Use the horizontal and vertical scroll bars to specify the watermark position.
– Sharing: Select whether to register the watermark as public or private.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

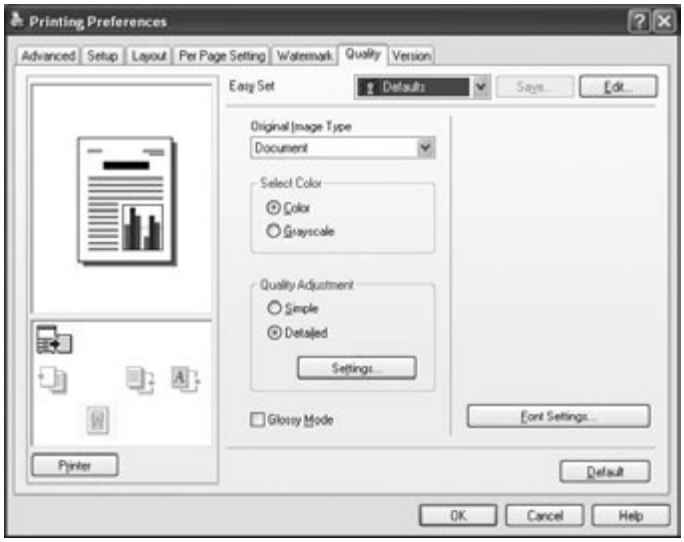
...

Note

Only the administrator can select a setting under “Sharing”.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Quality tab settings



Specifying settings

1 Click the Quality tab.

2 Specify settings for the following:

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Quality tab parameters

Item	Description
Original Image Type	Select the contents of the original document to print with a quality suitable for the original document. Document: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for documents containing mostly text. Photo: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for photos. DTP: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for documents produced using a DTP application. WEB: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for Web page printing. CAD: Select this setting to print with a quality suitable for CAD data printing.
Select Color	Select the color for printing. Color: Select this setting to print in color. Grayscale: Select this setting to print in grayscale.
Quality Adjustment	Adjust the image quality. Detailed: Select this setting to separately adjust the text, photos, and charts in the document.
Glossy Mode	Select this check box to print using a glossy finish.

Font settings

You can replace the TrueType fonts used in Windows with the printer fonts of this machine.

1 Click the [Font Settings] button.

2 Specify settings for the following:

- Download Font Format: Select the TrueType font downloading method.
- User Printer Fonts: Replace TrueType fonts with the printer fonts.

Note

Using the printer fonts will shorten the printing time, however, there may be a difference in the screen display and the print results.

When using TrueType fonts, select from the "Download Font Format" drop-down list the font type to be downloaded to the printer.

Specify the font replacement list from the Device Settings tab.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Option tab settings

You can specify the options installed on this machine so that they can be used from the printer driver.

...

Note

If the installed options are not set from the Option tab, the function for the option cannot be used with the printer driver. When installing options, be sure to specify the correct settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting options

1 For Windows 2000/NT 4.0, click the [Start] button, point to “Settings”, and then click “Printers”.

For Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers and Faxes”.

2 Right-click the printer icon, and then click “Properties”.

3 Click the Option tab.

4 Select the installed options from the drop-down lists.

Note

To automatically register the installed options in the “Option” list, click the [Gather Option Information] button when connected to the machine.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

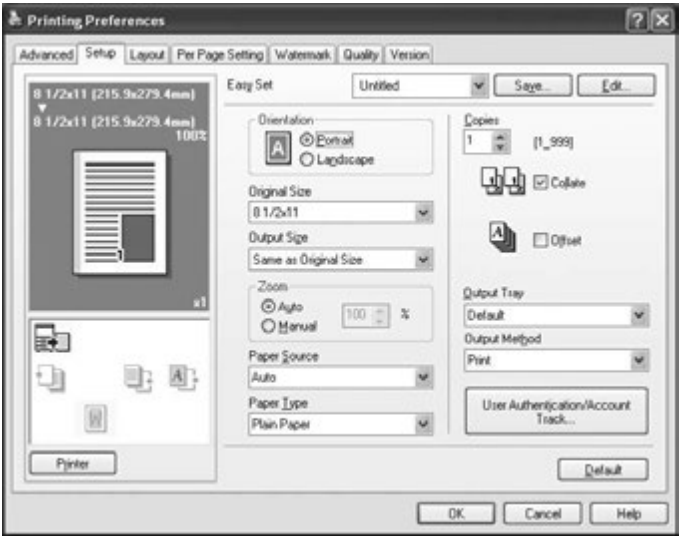
Saving the driver settings

With PostScript drivers, you can save the settings of the driver and recall them as necessary.

To save the driver settings

1 Change the driver settings in the Setup tab and the Per Page Setting tab.

2 Click the [Save] button.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3 Enter the file name in the “Name” text box.

4 Enter a message in the “Comment” text box as necessary.

5 Specify whether to register the watermark as public or private.

6 Click the [OK] button.

The settings are registered in a library.

Note

The file extension is “.ksf”.

You can save up to 25 sets of settings in the library.

Only the administrator can select a setting under “Sharing”.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Viewing the settings

➔ Select the settings to be viewed from the “Easy Set” drop-down list on the Printing Preferences dialog box.

The settings are recalled and displayed in the Printing Preferences dialog box.

Changing the settings

1 On the Printing Preferences dialog box, click the [Edit] button.

2 From the list, select the file that you want to change, and then change the settings.

– To delete the file, click the [Delete] button.

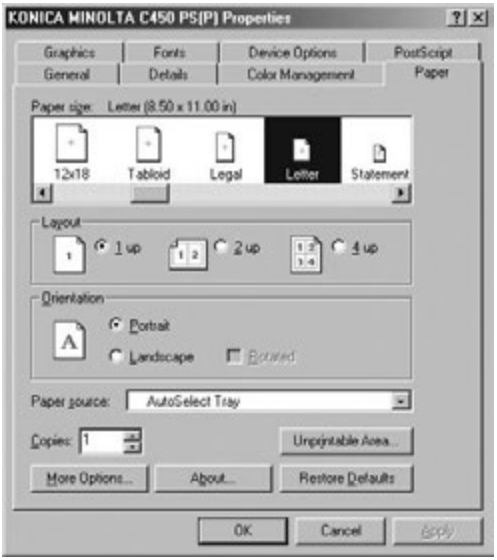
3 Click the [Options] button and check the recalled settings, and then click the [OK] button.

4 Click the [OK] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3.4 Setting up the PPD driver (Windows)

Settings



Paper tab

Item	Function
Paper size	Specifies the paper size.
Layout	Specifies the number of pages printed on one page.
Orientation	Specifies the orientation.
Rotated	Rotates the paper.
Paper source	Selects the paper tray.
Copies	Specifies the number of copies to print.
More Options	Specifies the paper type and output device.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Graphics tab

Item	Function
Resolution	Specifies the print resolution.
Color Control	Specifies whether to adjust the color to that on the screen.
Halftone	Specifies the halftone number of lines and the pattern angle.
Other	Prints a negative or mirror image.
Magnification	Specifies the enlargement and reduction ratio.

Device options tab

To specify the following options, right-click the printer icon in the Printers window, and then click “Properties” or “Printing Preferences” in the menu that appeared.

Item	Function
Collated	Specifies whether to print multiple copies in sets.
Offset	When printing multiple copies, shifts the output position of each set.
Binding Position	Specifies the binding position.
Duplex	Specifies double-sided printing.
Special Mode	Specifies booklet printing.
Staple	Performs stapling.
Hole Punch	Performs hole punching.
Fold	Performs folding.
Front Cover	Attaches a front cover page.
Front Cover Tray	Selects the paper tray for the front cover.
Back Cover	Attaches a back cover page.
Back Cover Tray	Selects the paper tray for the back cover.
OHP Interleaving	Inserts interleaves between overhead projector transparencies.
OHP Interleaving Tray	Selects the paper tray for the transparency interleaves.
Stop	Temporarily stops printing after part of the document has been printed so that the proof print can be checked.
Color Selection	Specifies whether to print in color or grayscale.
Gloss Mode	Prints using a glossy finish.
Original Document Type	Prints with a quality suitable for the original document.
Color Matching (Text)	Adjusts the color quality of the text in a document.
Grayscale (Text)	Specifies whether to print the text in a document in grayscale.
Screening (Text)	Specifies screening of the text in a document.
Color Matching (Photo)	Adjusts the color quality of photos in a document.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Item	Function
Grayscale (Photo)	Specifies whether to print the photos in a document in grayscale.
Screening (Photo)	Specifies screening of photos in a document.
Smoothing (Photo)	Specifies smoothing of photos in a document.
Color Matching (Charts and Graphs)	Adjusts the color quality of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.
Smoothing (Charts and Graphs)	Adjusts the smoothing process of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.

You can specify the following options by right-clicking the printer icon in the Printers window, then clicking “Properties”.

Device Options tab

Item	Function
Available printer memory	Specifies the memory that is installed on this machine.
Installable options	Specifies the options that are installed on this machine.

PostScript tab

Item	Function
PostScript Output Method	Specifies the PostScript file output format.
PostScript Header	Specifies whether to transmit header information to the printer.
Print PostScript Error Information	Specifies whether to print PostScript error reports.
PostScript Timeout Value	Specifies the time for a timeout.

Fonts tab

Item	Function
Send TrueType fonts to the printer according to font Substitution Table	Prints the font specified in the Font Substitution Table with the printer fonts. The Font Substitution Table can be specified by clicking the [Edit the Table] button.
Always use built-in printer fonts instead of TrueType fonts	Prints all fonts with printer fonts.
Always use TrueType fonts	The printer fonts are not substituted.
Send Fonts As	Specifies the font transmission method.

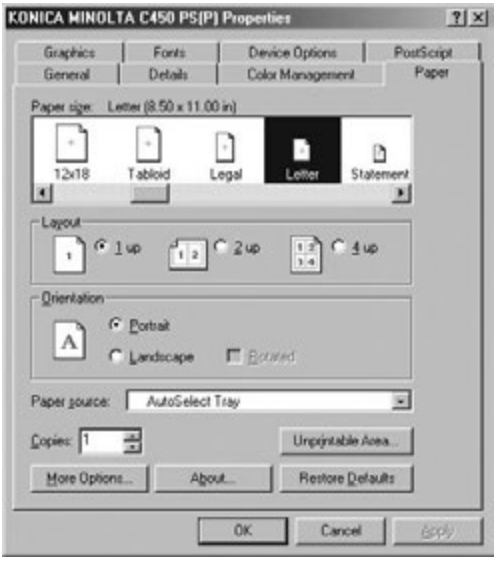
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Paper tab settings

You can specify the orientation and number of pages to be printed on one page when printing.

To specify the paper settings

1 Click the Paper tab.



2 Specify settings for the following:

- Paper size: Select the paper size.
- Layout: Select the number of pages to be printed on one page (N in 1 printing).
- Orientation: Select the orientation.
- Rotated: Select this check box to rotate the paper.
- Paper source: Select the paper drawer.
- Copies: Specify the number of copies to print.
- More Options: Specify the paper type and output device.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifying the Device Options tab settings

From the Device Options tab, you can specify advanced functions, such as finishing functions and color adjustments.

To specify advanced functions

1 Click the Device Options tab.

2 Select a function, and then select the setting from the “Change setting for” drop-down list.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Detail

For the functions and settings that can be specified, refer to “Settings” on page 3-70.

Note

The fold function is available only when optional Finisher FS-603 is installed.

The staple function is available only when optional Finisher FS-507 or FS-603 is installed.

Number of pages that can be stapled when FS-507 is installed: Up to 50 pages on A4 ◪ or smaller plain paper, and up to 25 pages on B4 or larger paper. Number of pages that can be stapled when FS-603 is installed: Up to 50 pages of A4 ◪ or smaller plain paper, and up to 25 pages on B4 or larger paper.

The hole-punch function is available only when optional Finisher FS-507 or FS-603 is installed. When using optional Finisher FS-603, the punch kit must be installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting options

You can specify the options installed on this machine so that they can be used from the printer driver.

Note

If the installed options are not set from the Device Options tab, the function for the option cannot be used with the printer driver. When installing options, be sure to specify the correct settings.

To select an option

1. Click the [Start] button, and then click “Printers”.
2. Right-click the printer icon, and then click “Properties”.
3. Click the Device Options tab.
4. Select a function, and then select the setting from the “Change setting for” drop-down list.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Detail

For the functions and settings that can be specified, refer to “Settings” on page 3-70.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

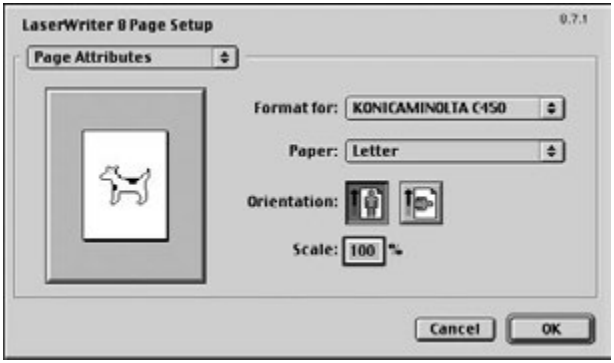
3.5 Setting up the PPD driver (Mac OS 9.2)

Settings

The functions of this machine can be specified on the Page Setup and Print dialog boxes displayed from an application.

The settings can only be applied while using the application. When the application is exited, the settings return to their defaults.

Page Setup dialog box



Page Setup items

Menu	Item	Function
Page Attributes	Paper	Specifies the paper size.
	Orientation	Specifies the orientation.
	Scale	Specifies the enlargement and reduction ratio.
PostScript Options	Flip Horizontal	Prints the image flipped horizontally.
	Flip Vertical	Prints the image flipped vertically.
	Invert Image	Prints a negative image.
	Substitute Fonts	Replaces some fonts with printer fonts.
	Smooth Text	Smooths text data.
	Smooth Graphics	Smooths graphic data.
	Precision Bitmap Alignment	Corrects jagged graphic images.
	Unlimited Downloadable Fonts	Does not limit downloading screen fonts.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Menu	Item	Function
Custom Paper Size	Units	Selects the measurement units.
	Paper Size	Specifies any paper size.
	Margins	Specifies the paper margins.
	Custom Page Size Name	Enters the registered name for the specified paper size and margin after the [OK] button is clicked.

...

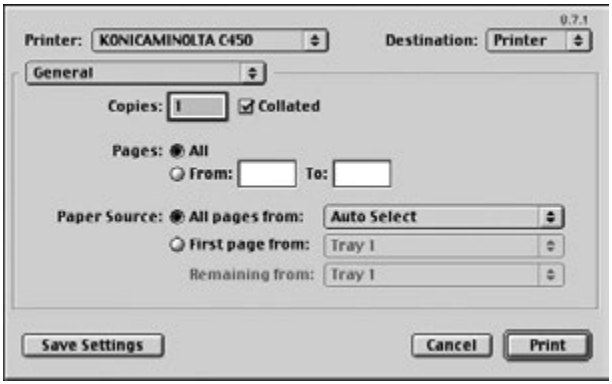
Note

Depending on the application, “Page Setup” may be displayed as “Paper Setup”. In addition, you may have to select “Paper Setup”, then “Options” from the “File” menu.

The dialog boxes differ depending on the application.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Print dialog box



Print items

Menu	Item	Function
General	Copies	Specifies the number of copies to print.
	Collated	Prints multiple copies in sets.
	Pages	Specifies the page range to print.
	Paper Source	Selects the paper tray.
Color Matching	Color Selection	Specifies the color for printing.
	Matching Style	Selects the matching method.
	Print Profile	Specifies the color adjustment profile of the output device.
Background Printing	Printing Method	Specifies background printing.
	Print Time	Specifies the priority level and print time.
Save as File	Format	Specifies the output format of the PostScript file.
	PostScript Level	Specifies the PostScript level.
	Data Format	Specifies the format to save a document.
	Save Fonts	Specifies whether to include the font data on a file.
Font Settings	Font Settings	Adds information to the font key.
	Font Download	Specifies the conditions to download fonts.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Menu	Item	Function
Layout	Pages per sheet	Specifies the number of pages to print on one page.
	Layout direction	Specifies the page order for printing multiple pages on one page.
	Border	Specifies the borders around pages.
Job Logging	When a PostScript Error Occurs	Specifies the PostScript error report conditions.
	Operation Record	Specifies the conditions for the operation record to be saved.
	Operation Record File	Specifies the folder to which the operation record is to be saved.
Cover Page	Print Cover	Attaches a cover.
	Cover Paper Source	Selects the paper tray containing the cover pages.
Finishing Options 1	Offset	Specifies offset.
	Output Tray	Selects the exit tray.
	Binding Position	Specifies the binding position.
	Duplex	Performs double-sided printing.
	Combination	Specifies booklet printing.
	Staple	Performs stapling.
	Punch	Performs hole punching.
Finishing Options 2	Fold	Performs folding.
	Front Cover	Attaches a front cover page.
	Front Cover Tray	Selects the paper tray for the front cover.
	Back Cover	Attaches a back cover page.
	Back Cover Tray	Selects the paper tray for the back cover.
	OHP Interleaving	Inserts interleaves between overhead projector transparencies.
	OHP Interleaving Tray	Selects the paper tray for the transparency interleaves.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Menu	Item	Function
Finishing Options 3	Stop	Temporarily stops printing after part of the document has been printed so that the proof print can be checked.
	Resolution	Specifies the print resolution.
	Color Selection	Specifies whether to print in color or grayscale.
	Gloss Mode	Prints with a glossy finish.
	Original Document Type	Prints with a quality suitable for the original document.
	Color Matching (Text)	Adjusts the color quality of the text in a document.
	Grayscale (Text)	Specifies whether to print the text in a document in grayscale.
Finishing Options 4	Screening (Text)	Specifies screening of the text in a document.
	Color Matching (Photo)	Adjusts the color quality of photos in a document.
	Grayscale (Photo)	Specifies whether to print the photos in a document in grayscale.
	Screening (Photo)	Specifies screening of photos in a document.
	Smoothing (Photo)	Specifies smoothing of photos in a document.
	Color Matching (Charts and Graphs)	Adjusts the color quality of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.
	Smoothing (Charts and Graphs)	Adjusts the smoothing process of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.

Note

The dialog boxes differ depending on the application.

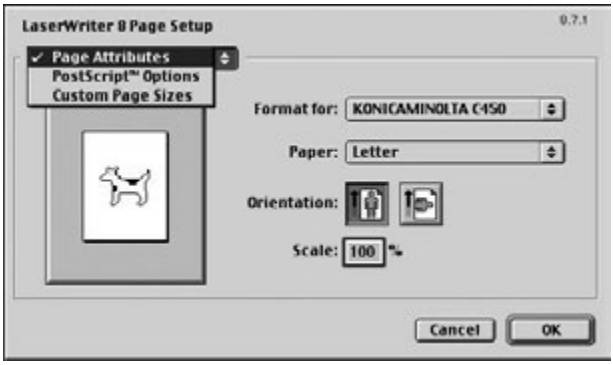
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Page Setup

Basic settings (Page Attributes)

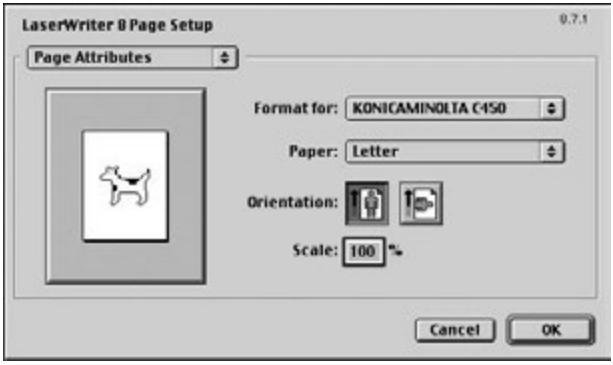
1 Select “Page Setup” or “Paper Setup” from the “File” menu.

2 Select “Page Attributes”.



3 Specify settings for the following:

- Paper: Select the paper size.
- Orientation: Select the orientation.
- Scale: Specify the enlargement and reduction ratio.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Note

The folding function can be selected when “Layout” is selected in the Print dialog box.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

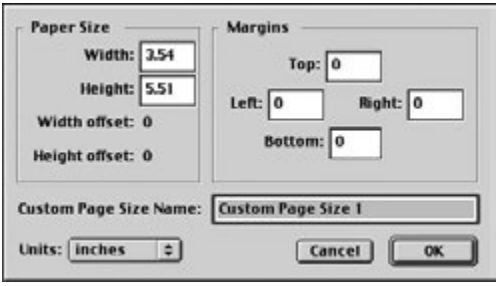
Custom Page Sizes

1 Select “Page Setup” or “Paper Setup” from the “File” menu.

2 Select “Custom Page Sizes”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Paper Size: Specify the paper size.
- Margins: Specify the paper margins.
- Custom Page Size Name: Enter the registered name for the specified paper size and margin, and then click the [OK] button.
- Units: Select the measurement units.



4 Click the [OK] button.

This registers the custom page settings, and allows you to select the paper in the screen that appears when “Page Attributes” is selected.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

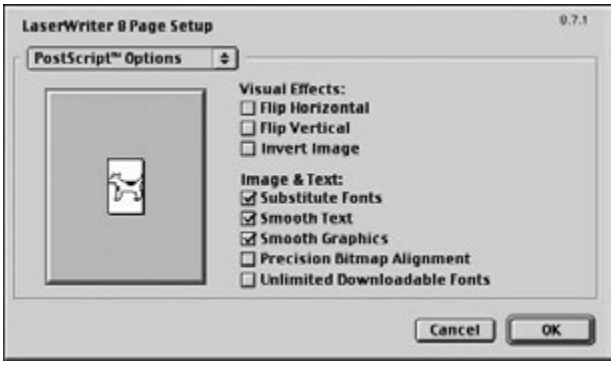
PostScript Options

1 Select “Page Setup” or “Paper Setup” from the “File” menu.

2 Select “PostScript Options”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Visual Effects: Select the “Flip Horizontal”, “Flip Vertical”, or “Invert Image” check box.
- Substitute Fonts: Select this check box to replace some fonts with printer fonts.
- Smooth Text: Select this check box to smooth text data.
- Smooth Graphics: Select this check box to smooth graphic data.
- Precision Bitmap Alignment: Select this check box to correct jagged graphic images.
- Unlimited Downloadable Fonts: Select this check box to allow unlimited downloading of screen fonts.



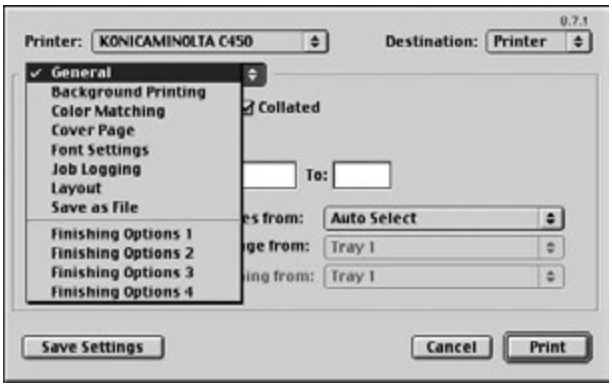
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing

Basic settings (General)

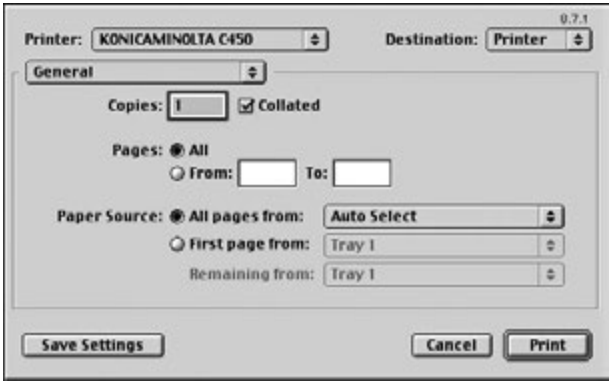
1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “General”.



3 Specify settings for the following:

- Copies: Specify the number of copies to print.
- Collated: Select this check box to print multiple copies in sets.
- Pages: Specify the page range to print.
- Paper Source: Select the paper tray.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing multiple pages on one page (Layout)

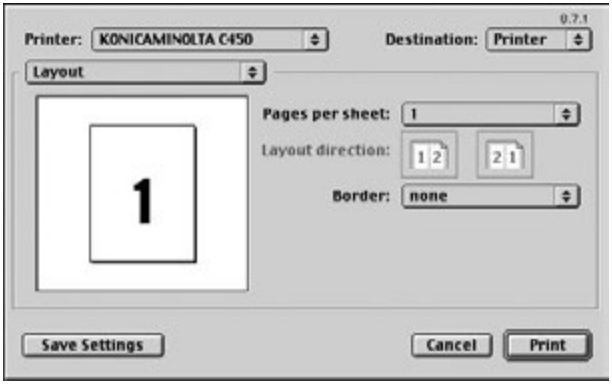
You can specify if multiple pages are printed on one page of paper or if double-sided printing is performed.

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “Layout”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Pages per sheet: Select the number of pages to print on one page.
- Layout direction: Select the document page order.
- Border: Select the type of borders to be printed around pages.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printer-specific options (Finishing Options 1 to 4)

You can specify printer-specific options in order to use the staple or hole-punch functions of this machine.

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

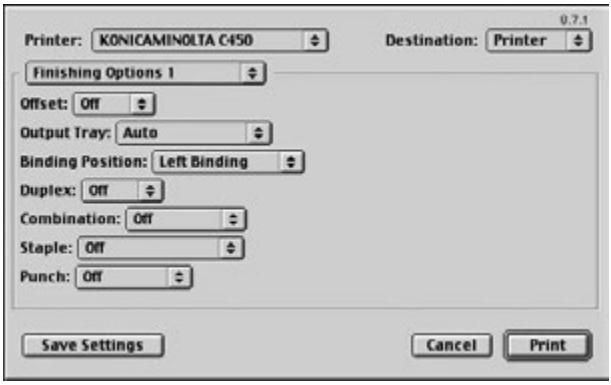
2 Select “Finishing Options 1 to 4”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Offset: Select if offset printing is performed.
- Output Tray: Select the exit tray.
- Binding Position: Select the binding position.
- Duplex: Select if double-sided printing is performed
- Combination: Select if booklet printing is performed.
- Staple: Select if stapling is performed.
- Punch: Select if hole punching is performed.
- Fold: Select if folding is performed.
- Front Cover: Select if a front cover page is to be attached.
- Front Cover Tray: Select the paper drawer for the front cover.
- Back Cover: Select if a back cover page is to be attached.
- Back Cover Tray: Select the paper drawer for the back cover.
- Transparency Interleaving: Select if interleaves are to be inserted between overhead projector transparencies.
- Transparency Interleaving Tray: Select the paper drawer for the transparency interleaves.
- Temporary Stop: Select if printing is temporarily stopped after part of the document has been printed so that the proof print can be checked.
- Resolution: Select the resolution.
- Color Selection: Select whether to print in color or grayscale.
- Glossy Mode: Select whether to print with a glossy finish.
- Original Image Type: Select the quality suitable for the original document.
- Color Matching (Text): Adjust the color quality of the text in a document.
- Grayscale (Text): Select whether to print the text in a document in grayscale.
- Screening (Text): Select if screening of the text in a document is performed.
- Color Matching (Photo): Adjust the color quality of photos in a document.
- Grayscale (Photo): Select whether to print the photos in a document in grayscale.
- Screening (Photo): Select if screening of photos in a document is performed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

– Smoothing (Photo): Select if smoothing of photos in a document is performed.
– Color Matching (Charts and Graphs): Adjust the color quality of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.
– Smoothing (Charts and Graphs): Adjust the smoothing process of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting options

You can specify the options installed on this machine so that they can be used from the printer driver.

...

Note

If the installed options are not set from the Installable Options screen, the function for the option cannot be used with the printer driver. When installing options, be sure to specify the correct settings.

To select an option

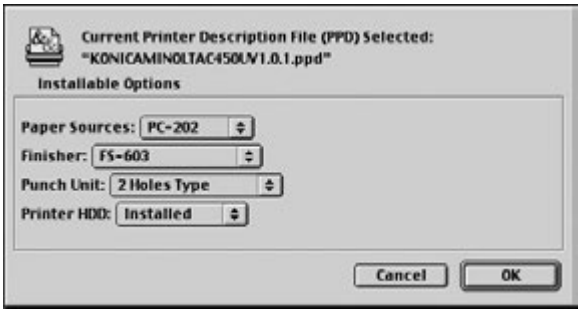
1 On the Apple menu, click “Chooser”.

2 Select the printer name.

3 Click the [Reset] button.

4 Click the [Configure] button.

The setting screen for adding options appears.



5 Select the options that are installed on this machine.

6 Click the [OK] button.

The Chooser window appears again.

7 Close the Chooser window.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Detail

The option settings are displayed automatically the first time the printer driver is selected. For details, refer to “Selecting a printer” on page 2-21.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3.6 Setting up the PPD driver (Mac OS X)

Settings

The functions of this machine can be specified on the Page Setup and Print dialog boxes displayed from an application.

The settings can only be applied while using the application. When the application is exited, the settings return to their defaults.

Page Setup Dialog Box

Page Setup items

Menu	Item	Function
Page Attributes	Paper Size	Specifies the paper size.
	Orientation	Specifies the orientation.
	Scale	Specifies the enlargement and reduction ratio.
Custom Paper Size	Paper Size	Specifies any paper size.
	Printer Margins	Specifies the paper margins.

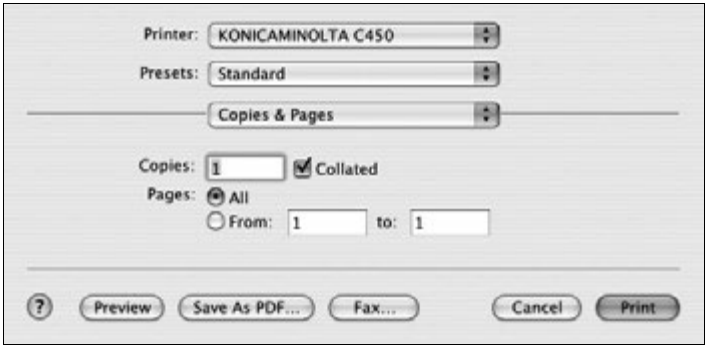
Note

Depending on the application, "Page Setup" may be displayed as "Paper Setup". In addition, you may have to select "Paper Setup", then "Options" from the "File" menu.

The dialog boxes differ depending on the application.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Print dialog box



Print items

Menu	Item	Function
Copies & Pages	Copies	Specifies the number of copies to print.
	Collated	Prints multiple copies in sets.
	Pages	Specifies the page range to print.
Layout	Pages per Sheet	Specifies the number of pages to print on one page.
	Layout Direction	Specifies the document page order.
	Border	Specifies the borders around pages.
Output Options	Output Format	Specifies the format of the file being output.
Scheduler*1	Print Document	Specifies the print time.
	Preferred Order	Specify the priority level.
Paper Processing*1	Reverse Page Order	Prints pages in the reverse order.
	Print	Specifies the pages for printing.
ColorSync*1	Color Conversion	Specifies the color conversion method.
	Quartz Filter	Specifies the color for printing.
Cover Page*1	Print Cover Page	Specifies whether to attach a cover page.
	Cover Page Type	Selects whether “Confidential” or any other comment is printed on the cover page.
Error Handling	PostScript Error	Specifies whether to print an error report when a PostScript error occurs.
Paper Feed	All pages from	Selects the paper tray.
	First page from	Selects the paper tray.
	Remaining from	Selects the paper tray.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Menu	Item	Function
Output Settings	Collate	Prints multiple copies in sets.
	Offset	Specifies offset.
	Duplex	Performs double-sided printing.
	Output Tray	Selects the exit tray.
	Binding Position	Specifies the binding position.
	Combination	Specifies booklet printing.
	Staple	Performs stapling.
	Punch	Performs hole punching.
	Fold	Performs folding.
Quality	Resolution	Specifies the resolution.
	Glossy Mode	Prints with a glossy finish.
	Original Image Type	Prints with a quality suitable for the original document.
	Color Matching (Text)	Adjusts the color quality of the text in a document.
	Pure Black (Text)	Specifies whether to print the text in a document in grayscale.
	Screen (Text)	Specifies screening of the text in a document.
	Color Matching (Photo)	Adjusts the color quality of photos in a document.
	Pure Black (Photo)	Specifies whether to print the photos in a document in grayscale.
	Screen (Photo)	Specifies screening of photos in a document.
	Smoothing (Photo)	Specifies smoothing of photos in a document.
	Color Setting (Graphic)	Adjusts the color quality of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.
	Smoothing (Graphic)	Adjusts the smoothing process of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.
Setup	Paper Type	Selects the paper type.
	Front Cover Page	Attaches a front cover page.
	Paper Tray (Front Cover Page)	Selects the paper tray for the front cover.
	Back Cover Page	Attaches a back cover page.
	Paper Tray (Back Cover Page)	Selects the paper tray for the back cover.
	Transparency Interleave	Inserts interleaves between overhead projector transparencies.
	Paper Tray (Transparency Interleave)	Selects the paper tray for the transparency interleaves.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Menu	Item	Function
Security	Output Method	Specifies output methods, such as “Secure Print” and “Save in User Box”.
	Secure Print Settings	Specifies secure print ID and password for “Secure Print”.
	Save in User Box Settings	Specifies the file name and user box number for “Save in User Box”.
	Account Track	Checks if account track settings have been applied and specifies the department name and password.

* Only displayed in Mac OS 10.3.

Note

The dialog boxes differ depending on the application.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Page setup

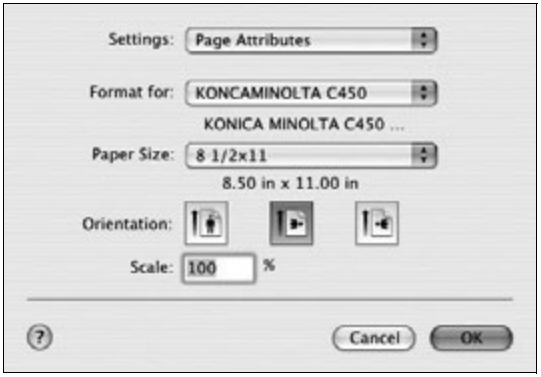
Basic settings (Page Attributes)

1 Select “Page Setup” or “Paper Setup” from the “File” menu.

2 Select “Page Attributes”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Paper Size: Select the paper size.
- Orientation: Select the orientation.
- Scale: Specify the enlargement and reduction ratio.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Custom Paper Size

1 Select “Page Setup” or “Paper Setup” from the “File” menu.

2 Selects “Custom Page Sizes”.

3 Click the [New] button.

4 Enter the paper size name.

5 Specify settings for the following:

- Paper Size: Specify the paper size.
- Printer Margins: Specify the paper margins.

6 Click the [Save] button.

7 Click the [OK] button.

This registers the custom paper size which allows you to select the paper size in the screen that appears when “Page Attributes” is selected.

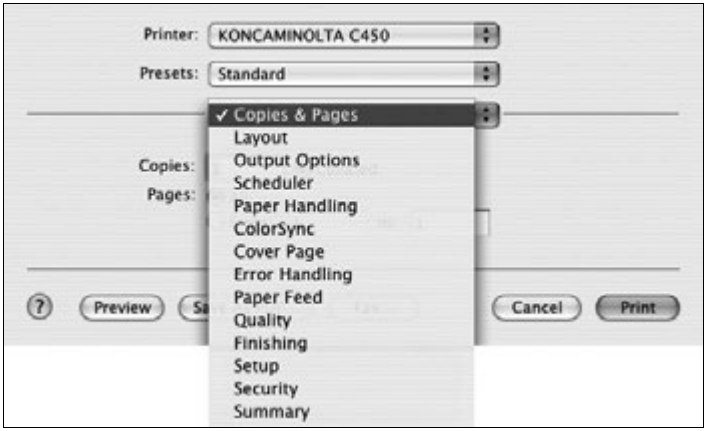
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing

Basic settings (Copies & Pages)

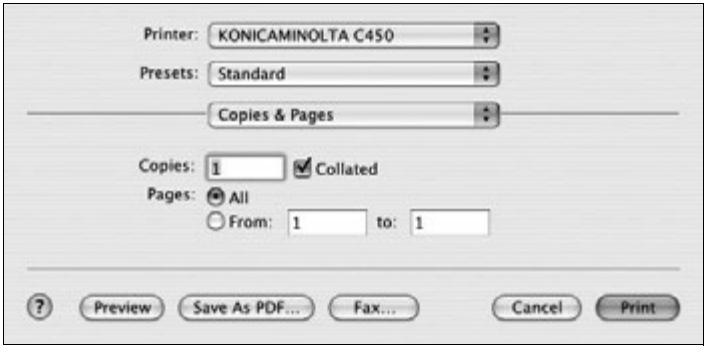
1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “Copies & Pages”.



3 Specify settings for the following:

- Copies: Specify the number of copies to print.
- Collated: Select this check box to print multiple copies in sets.
- Pages: Specify the page range to print.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing multiple pages on one page (Layout)

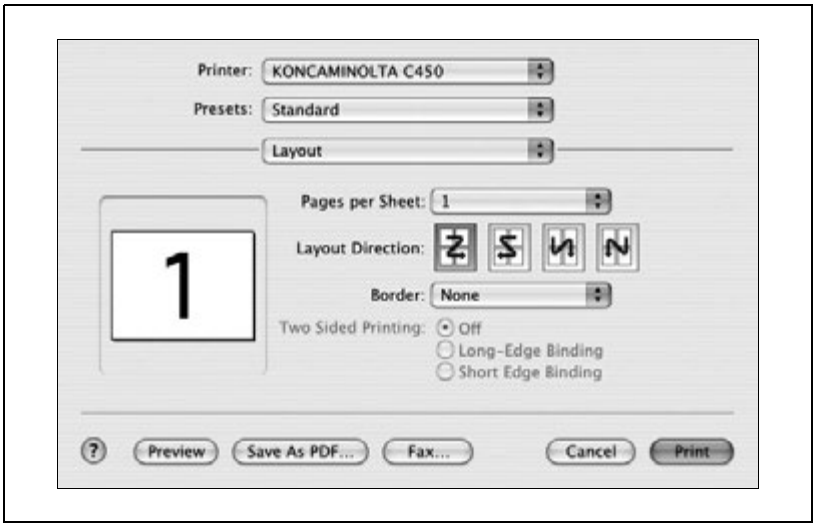
You can print multiple pages on one page.

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “Layout”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Pages per Sheet: Select the number of pages to print on one page.
- Layout Direction: Select the document page order.
- Border: Select the type of borders to be printed around pages.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Paper Feed

You can specify the paper trays for printing.

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “Paper Feed”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- All pages from: Select the paper tray loaded with the paper to print all pages.
- First page from: Select the paper tray loaded with the paper to print the first page.
- Remaining from: Select the paper tray loaded with the paper to print the pages starting from the second page.

Security

Not only can you print directly, but you can select “Secure Print”, which requires a password to print, “Save in User Box”, which saves documents in the HDD, “Proof and Print”, which prints the first set of multiple copies and temporarily stops printing, and “Account Track Settings”, which manages the number of printed pages.

...

Note

The secured printing and box functions are only available when an optional hard disk is installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting the output method

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “Security”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Output Method: Specify the conditions for “Secure Print” and “Save in User Box”.
- Secure Print Settings: Enter the ID and password when “Secure Print” is selected from the “Output Method” drop-down list. Enter the ID and password on this machine’s control panel when printing. (Up to 100 documents)
- Save in User Box Settings: Enter the file name and box number when “Save in User Box” or “Save in User Box and Print” is selected from the “Output Method” drop-down list.
- Account Track: Register the department name and password when the account track settings have been applied on this machine and when this check box is selected.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Detail

Print the document from the control panel of this machine. For details, refer to “Managing print jobs” on page 9-17.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Finishing

You can specify use the staple or hole punch finishing functions of this machine.

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “Finishing”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Collate: Select this check box to print multiple copies in sets.
- Offset: Select this check box to specify offset printing.
- Duplex: Select this check box to specify double-sided printing.
- Output Tray: Select the exit tray.
- Binding Position: Select the binding position.
- Combination: Select if booklet printing is performed.
- Staple: Select if stapling is performed.
- Punch: Select if hole punching is performed.
- Fold: Select if folding is performed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Image Processing

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

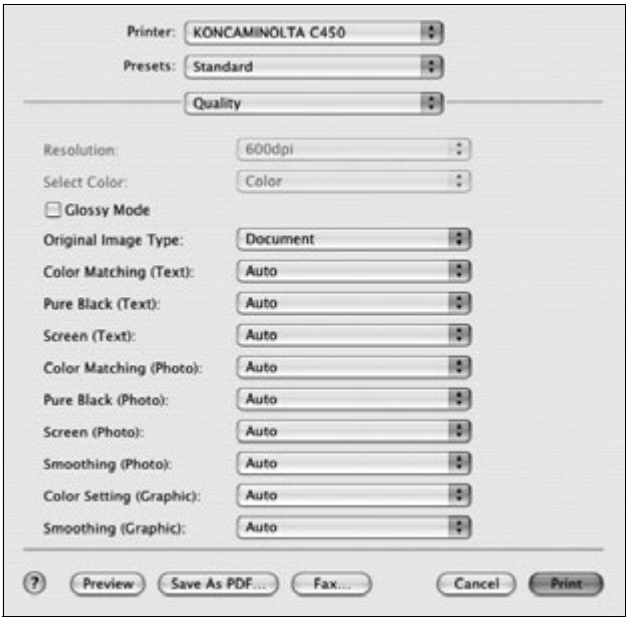
2 Select “Image Processing”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Resolution: Select the resolution.
- Glossy Mode: Select this check box to print with a glossy finish.
- Original Image Type: Select the quality suitable for the original document.
- Color Matching (Text): Adjust the color quality of the text in a document.
- Pure Black (Text): Specify whether to print the text in a document in grayscale.
- Screen (Text): Select if screening of the text in a document is performed.
- Color Matching (Photo): Adjust the color quality of photos in a document.
- Pure Black (Photo): Select whether to print the photos in a document in grayscale.
- Screen (Photo): Select if screening of photos in a document is performed.
- Smoothing (Photo): Select if smoothing of photos in a document is performed.
- Color Setting (Graphic): Adjust the color quality of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

– Smoothing (Graphic): Adjust the smoothing process of charts and graphs in a document to the text or photo settings.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setup

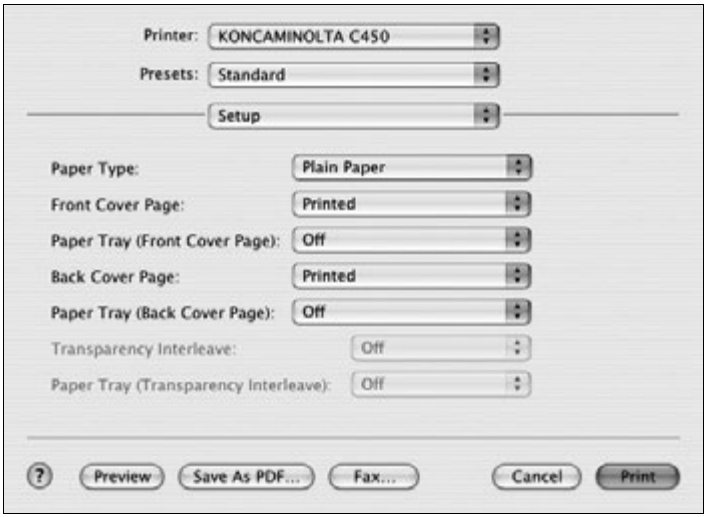
You can specify the cover settings.

1 From the “File” menu, select “Print”.

2 Select “Setup”.

3 Specify settings for the following:

- Paper Type: Select the paper type.
- Front Cover Page: Select if a front cover page is to be attached.
- Paper Tray (Front Cover Page): Select the paper drawer for the front cover.
- Back Cover Page: Select if a back cover page is to be attached.
- Paper Tray (Back Cover Page): Select the paper drawer for the back cover.
- Transparency Interleave: Select if interleaves are to be inserted between overhead projector transparencies.
- Paper Tray (Transparency Interleave): Select the paper drawer for the transparency interleaves.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Selecting options

You can specify the options installed on this machine so that they can be used from the printer driver.

Note

If the installed options are not set from the Installable Options screen, the function for the option cannot be used with the printer driver. When installing options, be sure to specify the correct settings.

To select an option

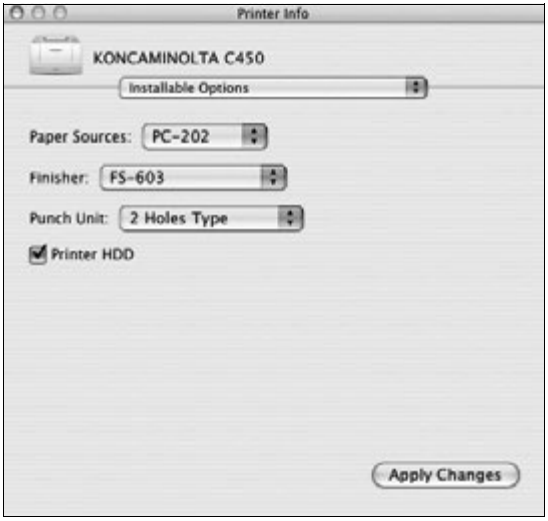
1 Open Print Center or Printer Setup Utility, located in Hard Disk\Applications\Utilities, and then select the printer model.

2 From the “Printer” menu, select “View Information”.

The Printer Info dialog box appears.

3 Select “Installable Options”.

4 Select the options that are installed on this machine.



5 Click the [Apply Changes] button, or click [×] to close the Printer Info dialog box.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Saving the driver settings

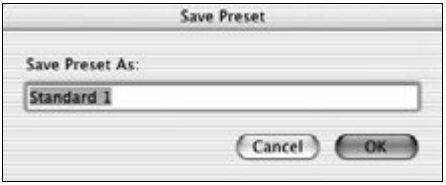
With Mac OS X drivers, you can save the new settings of the driver and recall them as necessary.

To save the driver settings

1 Change the driver settings in the dialog boxes that appear after “Copies & Pages” or “Layout” is selected.

2 From the “Presets” drop-down list, select “Save As”.

3 Enter the preset name in the “Save Preset As” box.



4 Click the [OK] button.

The settings are registered in the preset settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Viewing the settings

➔ Select the preset name from the “Presets” drop-down list in the Print dialog box to recall the settings.

The settings are recalled, and the printer driver dialog box appears again.

Changing the settings

1 Select the preset name from the “Presets” drop-down list in the Print dialog box to change the settings.

2 Change the driver settings in the dialog boxes that appear after “Copies & Pages” or “Layout” is selected.

3 From the “Presets” drop-down list, select “Save”.

– To delete the preset settings, select “Delete”. To change the name, select “Rename”. The preset settings are changed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

4 Control panel settings

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

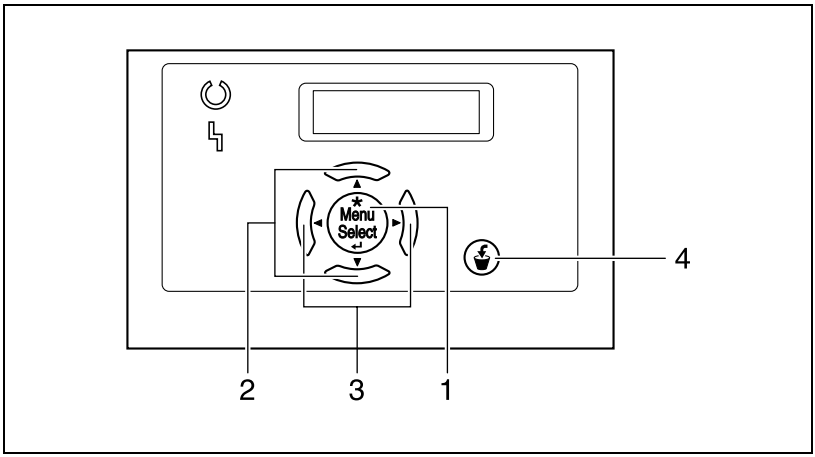
4 Control panel settings

4.1 Control panel

Available keys

From the control panel, jobs can be printed or deleted, initial settings, for example, for paper, can be specified, or various settings such as network settings can be changed.

The following four keys are used to specify settings.



No.	Key	Use
1	[Menu/Select] key	While the machine is waiting to receive data, press this key to display the settings menu. If this key is pressed while a setting is displayed, that setting is selected.
2	Arrow keys [▲] and [▼]	Press these keys to choose a different setting.
3	Arrow keys [◀] and [▶]	Press these keys to display a different menu screen. When entering values, press these keys to select a different digit to be changed.
4	Cancel key	Press this key to quit changing the settings in the menu.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Basic operations

The procedures for changing settings are described below in the following examples.

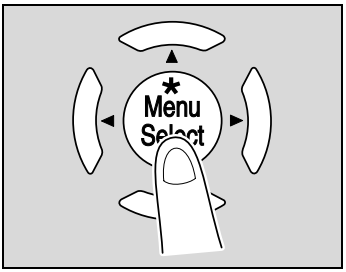
- Basic menu operations ➔ “Specifying the size of the paper in the bypass tray”
- User settings ➔ “Specifying the “Sleep Mode” function”
- Display the Administrator Setting screen ➔ “Entering the administrator password”

Basic menu operations

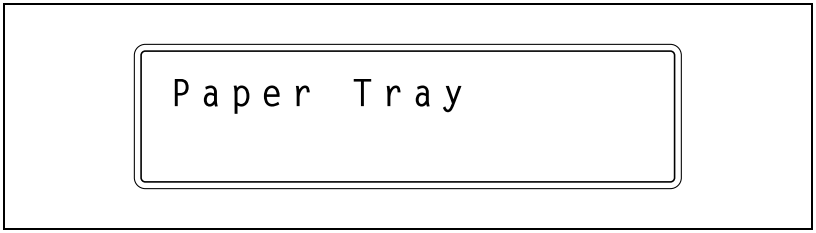
Example: “Paper Tray” — “Bypass Size”

1 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The settings menu appears.



2 Press the [▼] key until “Paper Tray” appears.



3 Press the [▶] key.

The “Paper Tray” menu appears.

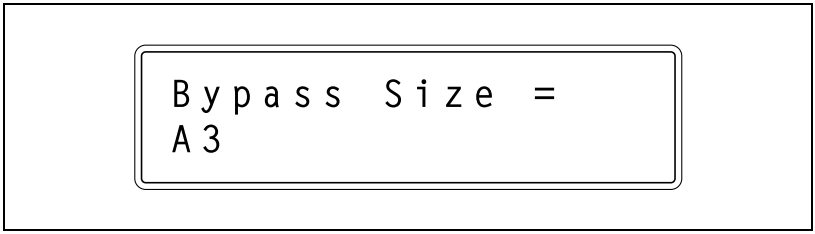
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

4 Press the [▼] key until “Bypass Size” appears.

5 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The paper size flashes, indicating that the setting can be changed.

6 Press the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired paper size appears.



7 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The paper size is changed and the next parameter appears.
If necessary, change other settings.

8 After the setting is changed, press the [Cancel] key.

The settings menu is exited.

...

Note

After changing the setting, press the [◀] key until the settings menu is exited.

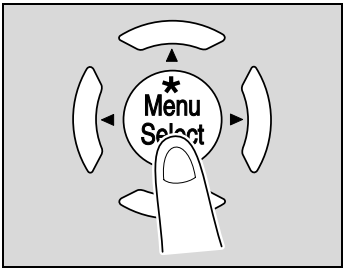
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Sleep mode

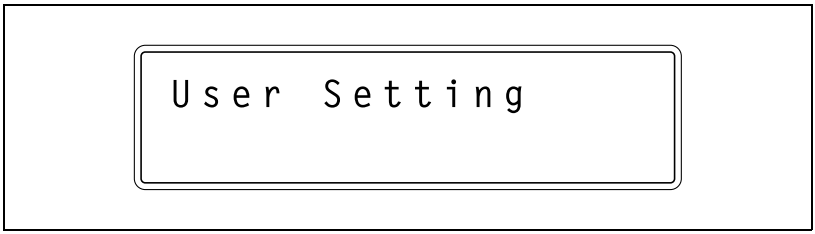
Example: “User Setting” — “Power Save” — “Sleep Mode”

1 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The settings menu appears.1



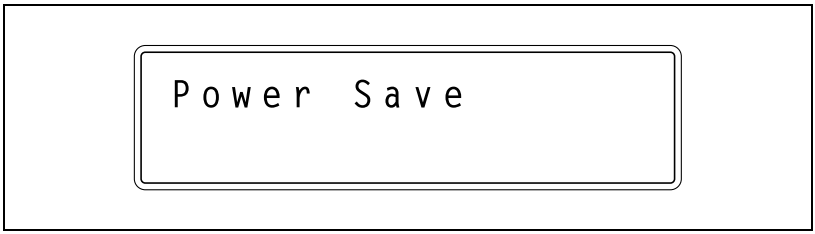
2 Press the [▼] key until “User Setting” appears.



3 Press the [▶] key.

The “User Setting” menu appears.

4 Press the [▼] key until “Power Save” appears.

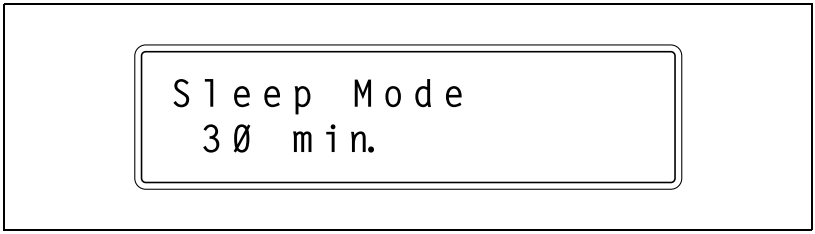


5 Press the [▶] key.

The “Power Save” menu appears.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 Press the [▼] key until “Sleep Mode” appears.



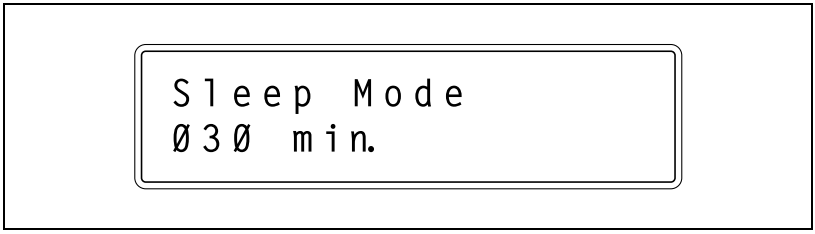
7 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The setting flashes, indicating that it can be changed.

8 Press the [▶] key.

The value flashes, indicating that it can be changed.

9 Press the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired value appears.



10 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The “Sleep Mode” function is changed and the screen shown in step 4 appears.
If necessary, change other settings.

11 After the setting is changed, press the [Cancel] key.

The settings menu is exited.

...

Note

After changing the setting, press the [◀] key until the settings menu is exited.

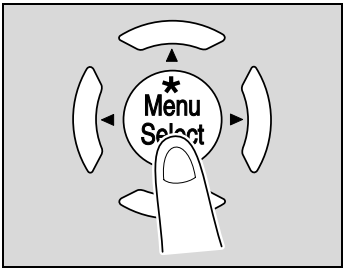
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Administrator password

Example: “Admin. Setting” — “Input Password”

1 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The settings menu appears.

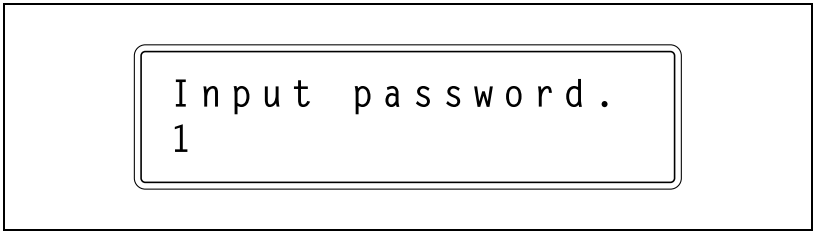


2 Press the [▼] key until “Admin. Setting” appears.

3 Press the [▶] key.

A screen appears, requesting the administrator password.

4 Press the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired value for the first digit of the password appears.

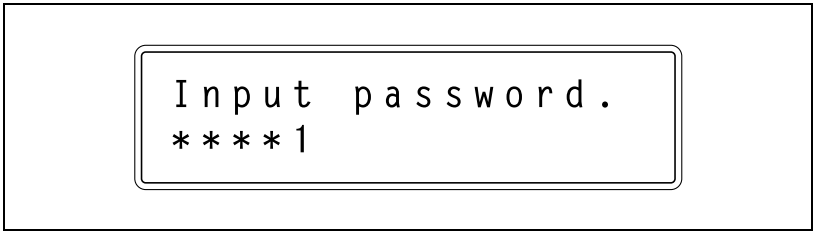


5 Press the [▶] key.

The next digit to the right can be entered.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 Press the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired value for the second digit of the password appears.



7 Continue pressing the [▶] key so that the next digit can be entered and pressing the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired value appears.

8 After entering the password, press the [Menu/Select] key.

The “Admin. Setting” menu appears.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

4.2 Overview of utility mode parameters

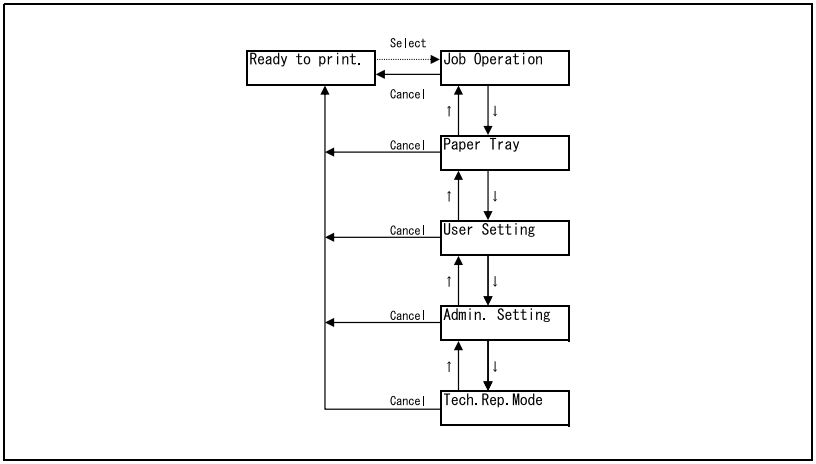
Settings menu list

This section describes the parameters available when the [Menu/Select] key is pressed.

Note

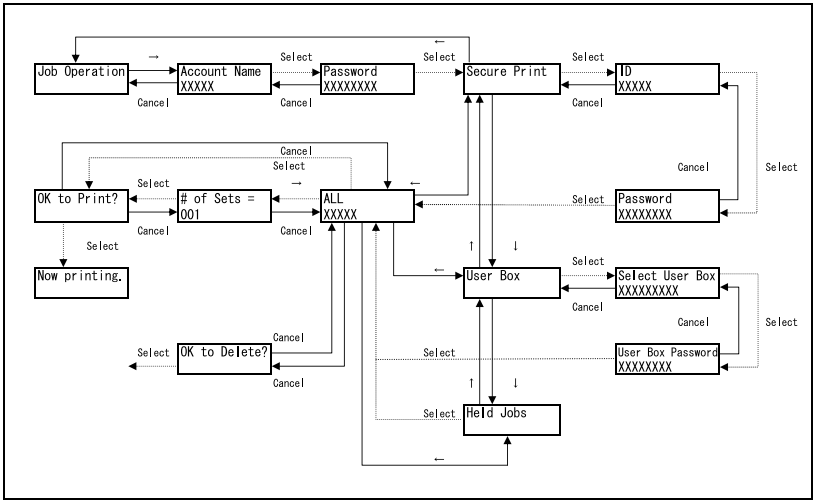
The parameters and settings that appear differ depending on the selected settings and installed options.

Main menu



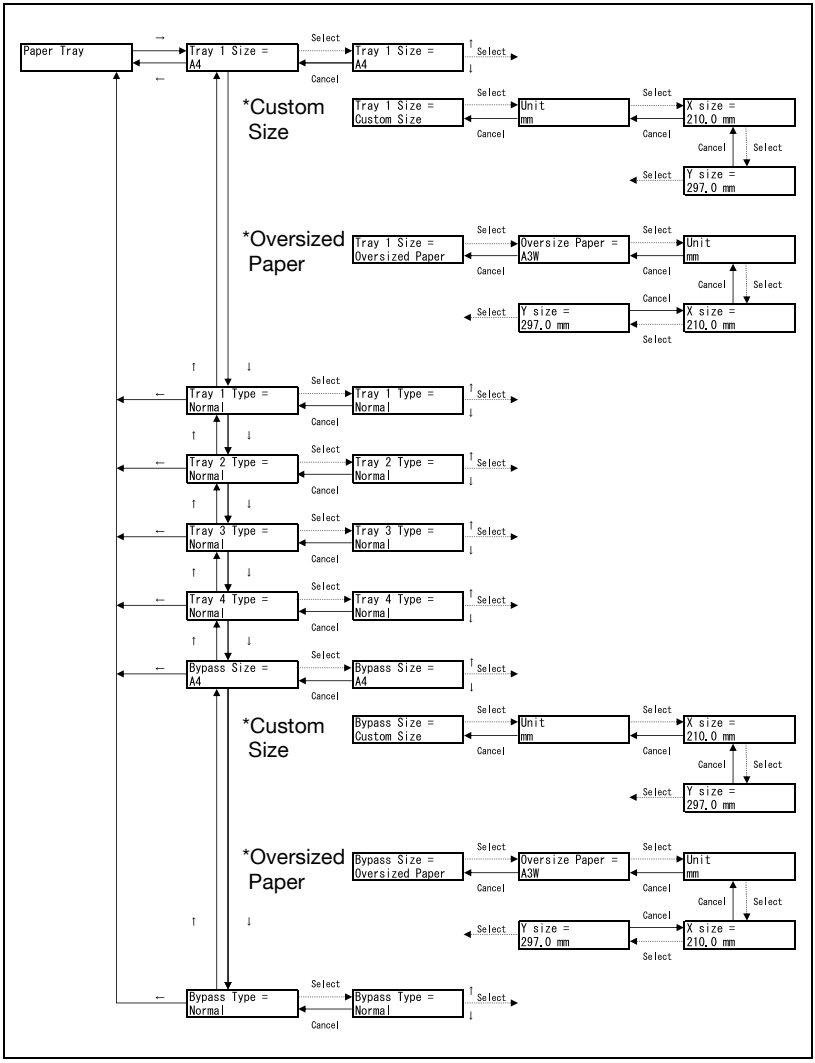
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР

Job Operation menu



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу
доставка • сервис • гарантия
info@km-shop.ru
(495) 646-04-26
www.km-shop.ru

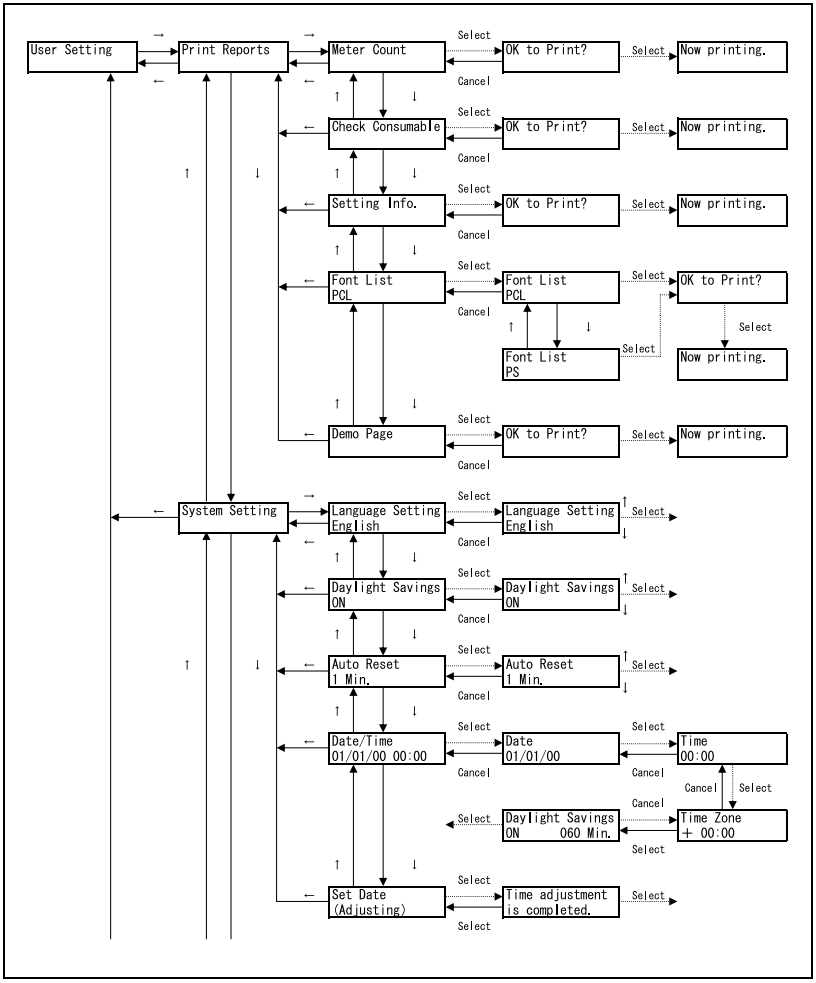
Paper Tray menu

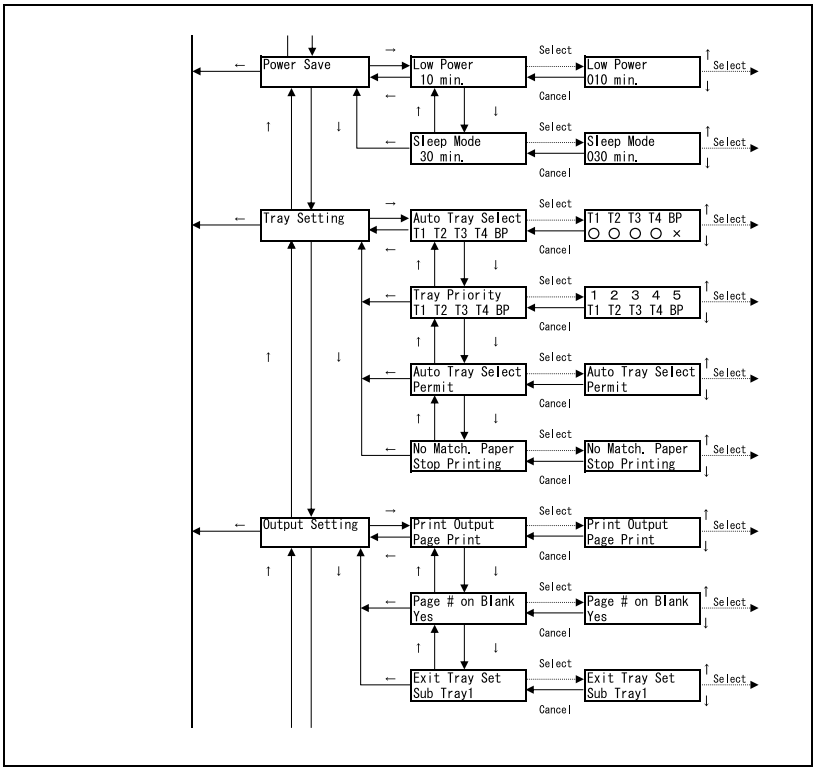


* The paper trays that appear differ depending on the options that are installed.

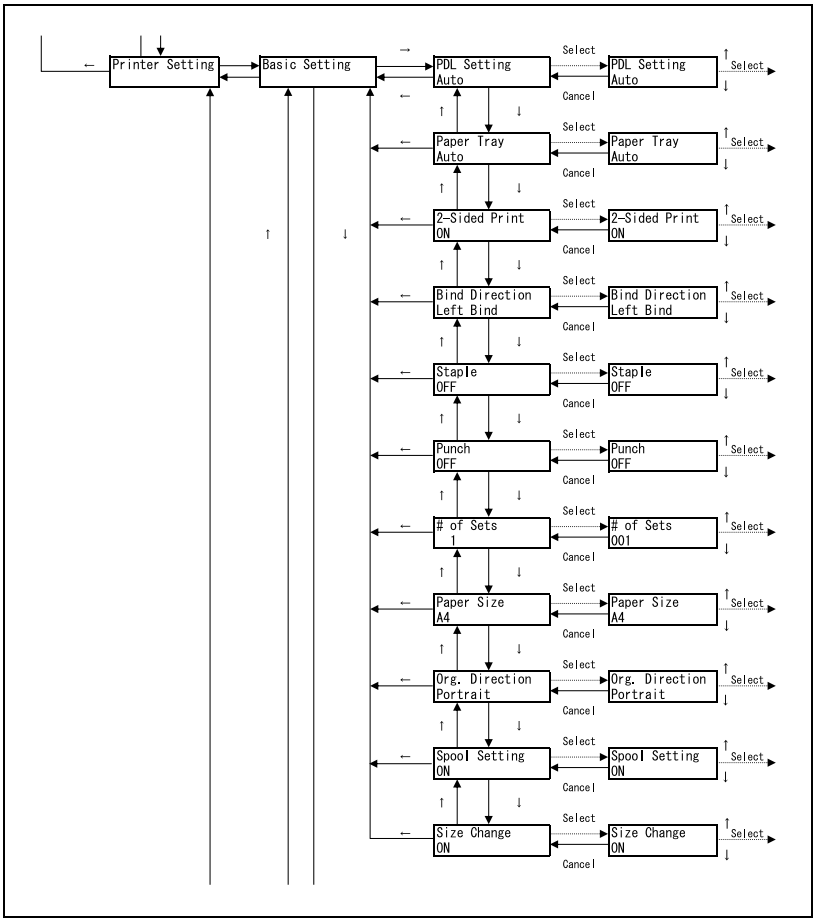
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

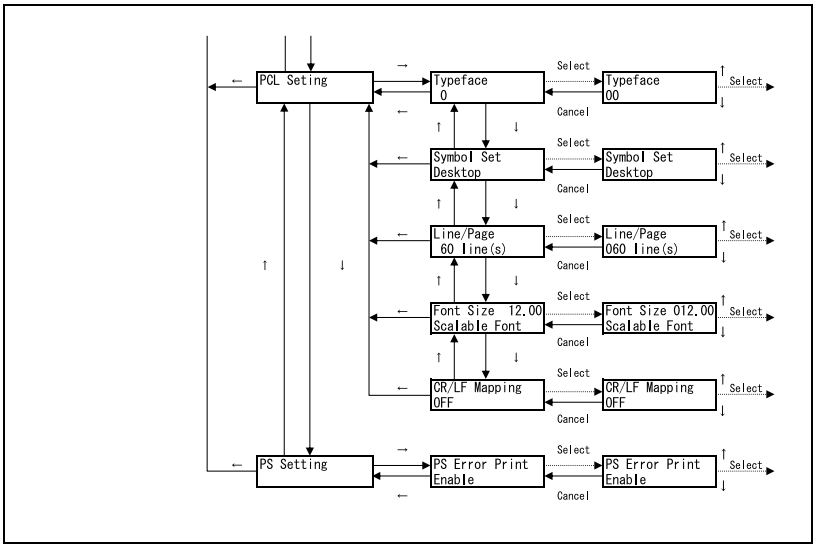
User Setting menu



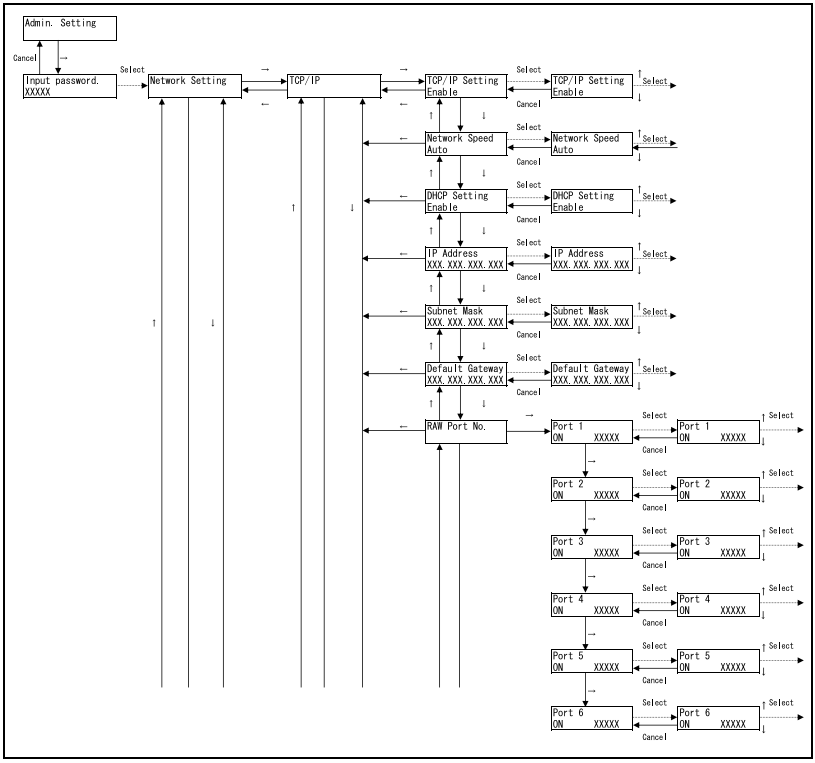


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

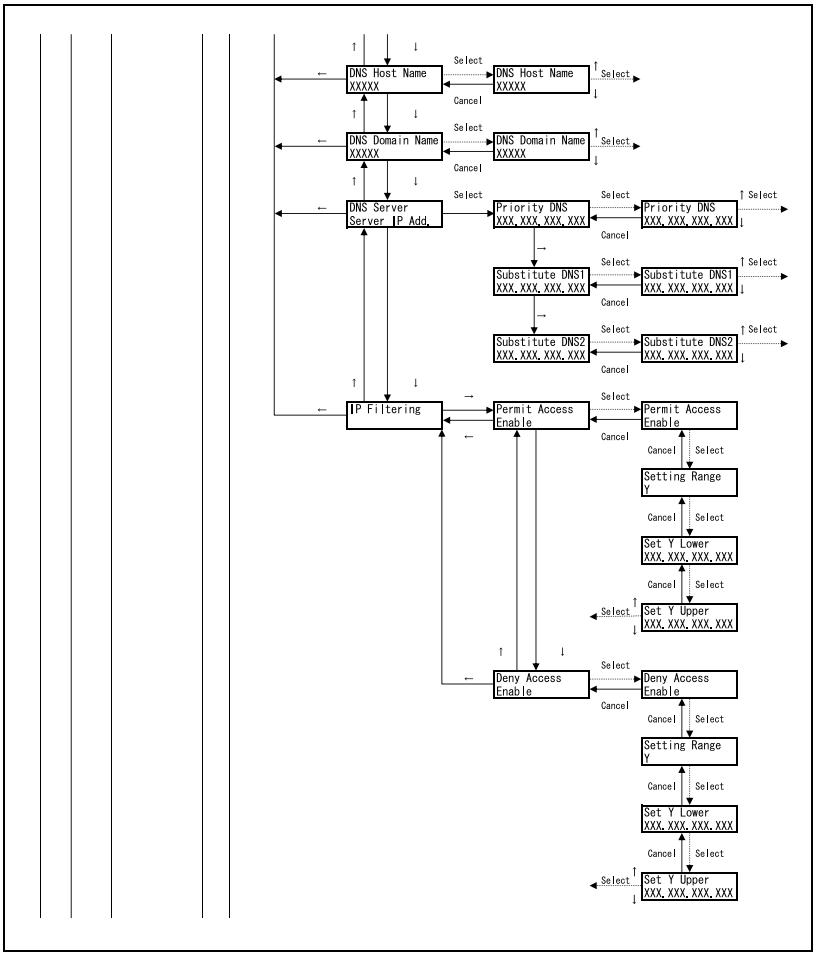

Printer Setting
Basic Setting
PDL Setting
Auto
Paper Tray
Auto
2-Sided Print
ON
Bind Direction
Left Bind
Staple
OFF
Punch
OFF
# of Sets
1
Paper Size
A4
Org. Direction
Portrait
Spool Setting
ON
Size Change
ON
Select
Cancel
001


PCL Seting
Typeface
0
Typeface
00
Symbol Set
Desktop
Symbol Set
Desktop
Line/Page
60 line(s)
Line/Page
060 line(s)
Font Size 12.00
Scalable Font
Font Size 012.00
Scalable Font
CR/LF Mapping
OFF
CR/LF Mapping
OFF
PS Setting
PS Error Print
Enable
PS Error Print
Enable
Select
Cancel

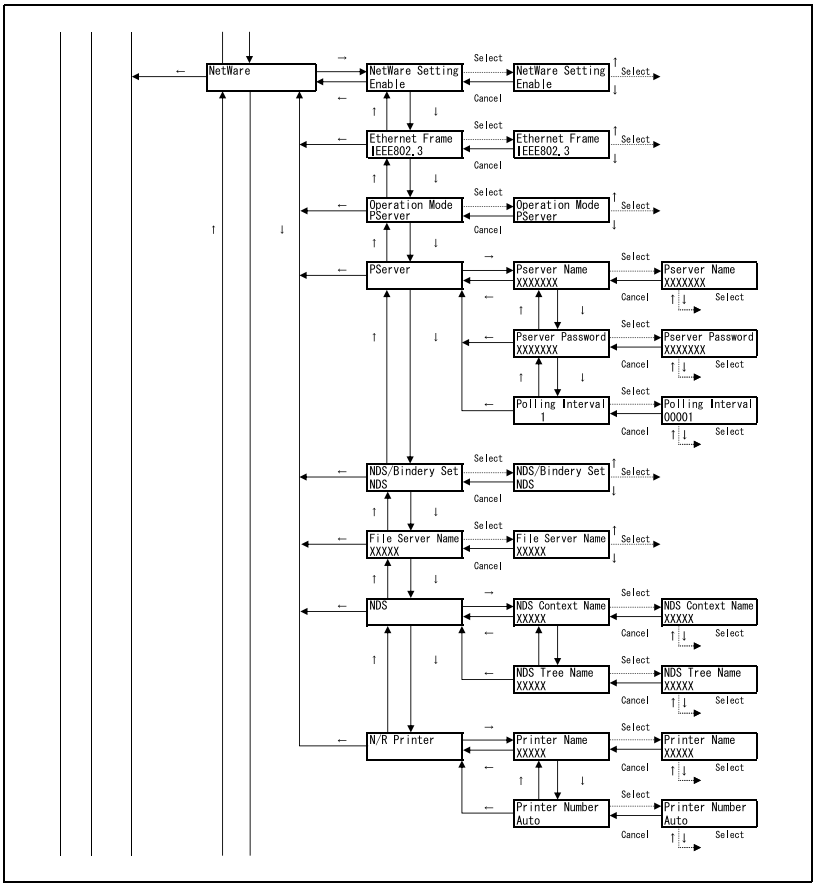
Admin. Setting menu



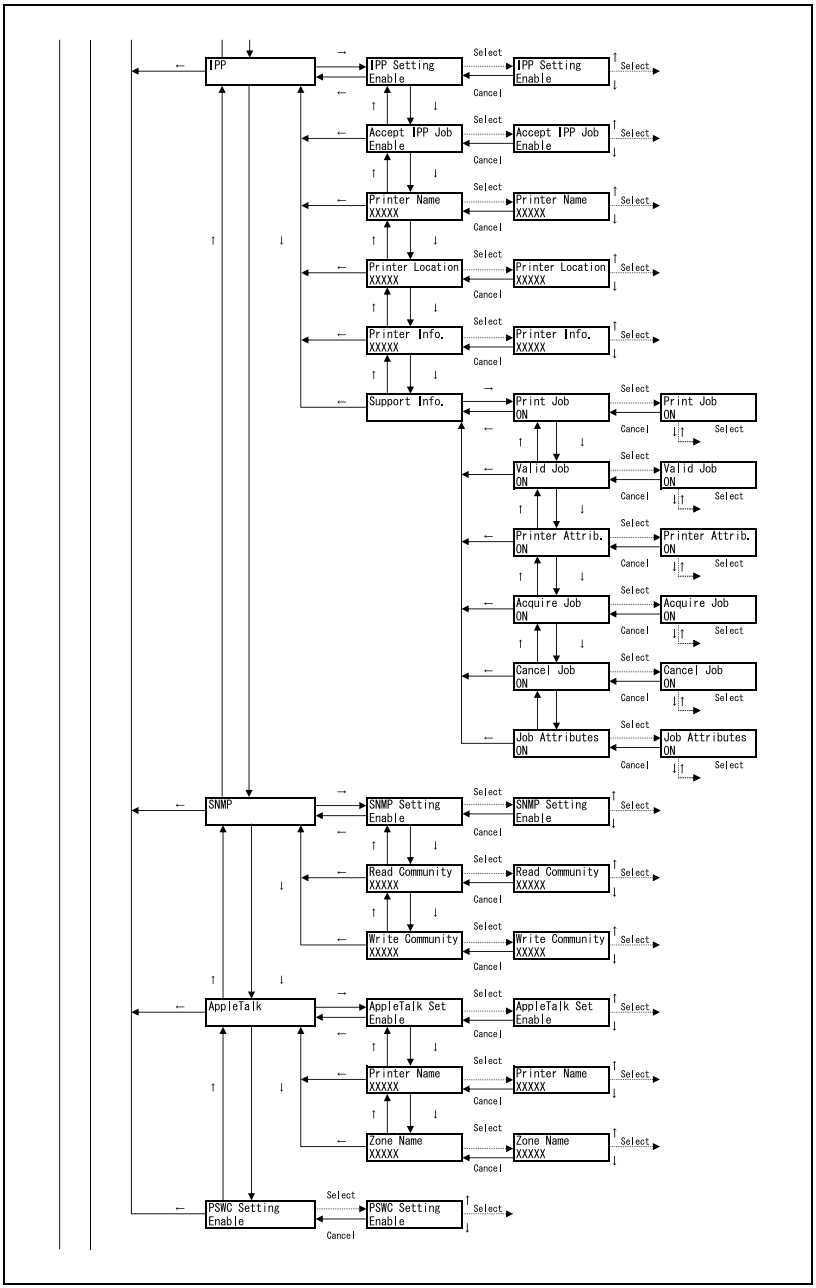
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru



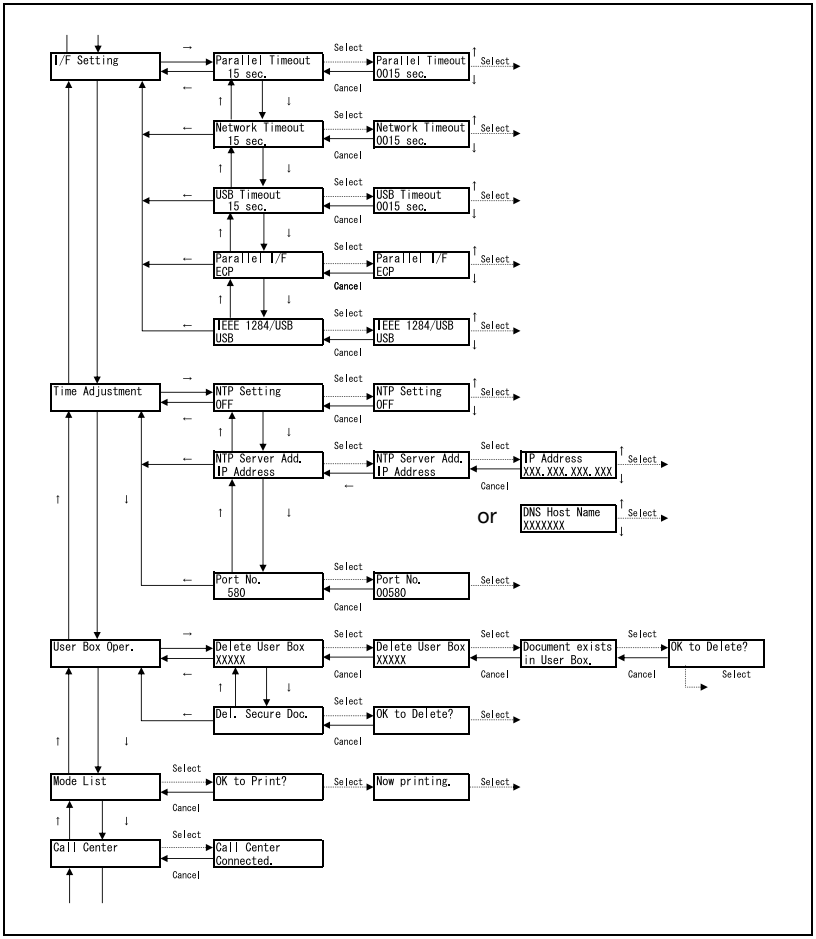
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru



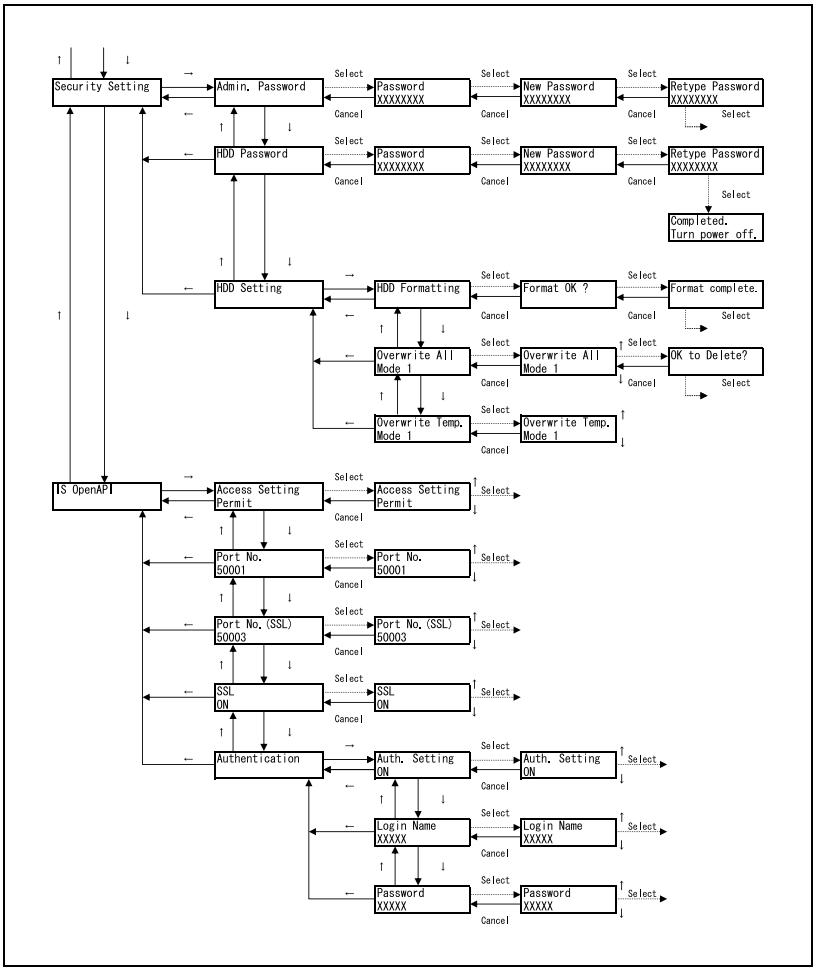
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу
доставка • сервис • гарантия
info@km-shop.ru
(495) 646-04-26
www.km-shop.ru



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу
доставка • сервис • гарантия
info@km-shop.ru
(495) 646-04-26
www.km-shop.ru


Security Setting
Admin. Password
Password XXXXXXXX
New Password XXXXXXXX
Retype Password XXXXXXXX
HDD Password
Completed. Turn power off.
HDD Setting
HDD Formatting
Format OK ?
Format complete.
Overwrite All Mode 1
OK to Delete?
Overwrite Temp. Mode 1
IS OpenAPI
Access Setting Permit
Port No. 50001
Port No.(SSL) 50003
SSL ON
Authentication
Auth. Setting ON
Login Name XXXXX
Password XXXXX
Select
Cancel

4.3 Parameters

Job Operation

This section describes the parameters and main settings that can be specified after pressing the [Menu/Select] key, then selecting “Job Operation”.

Account Name

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Account Name	Select the name of the account.	—
Password	Type in the password for the account.	—

Detail

“Account Name” appears only if account track settings have been specified on this machine.

Secure Print

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
ID	Type in the ID for the confidential document.	—
Password	Type in the password for the confidential document.	—

User Box

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Select User Box	Select the name of the box.	—
User Box Password	Type in the password of the box.	—

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Paper Tray

This section describes the parameters and main settings that can be specified after pressing the [Menu/Select] key, then selecting “Paper Tray”.

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Tray 1 Size	Select the size of paper loaded in Tray 1.	A4
Tray 1 Type	Select the type of paper loaded in Tray 1.	Normal
Tray 2 Type	Select the type of paper loaded in Tray 2.	Normal
Tray 3 Type	Select the type of paper loaded in Tray 3.	Normal
Tray 4 Type	Select the type of paper loaded in Tray 4.	Normal
Bypass Size	Select the size of paper loaded in the bypass tray.	A4
Bypass Type	Select the type of paper loaded in the bypass tray.	Normal

Detail

If “Custom Size” or “Oversized Paper” is selected as the paper size, the exact size can be specified.

User Setting

This section describes the parameters and main settings that can be specified after pressing the [Menu/Select] key, then selecting “User Setting”.

Print Reports

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Meter Count	Prints the total checklist.	—
Check Consumable	Prints the checklist for consumables.	—
Settings Info.	Prints a list of the machine settings.	—
Font List	Prints the font lists for PCL mode or PS mode.	—
Demo Page	Prints the demo page.	—

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

System Setting

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Language Setting	Specify the screen display language.	English
Daylight Saving	Select whether or not the machine's internal clock observes daylight saving time, and specify the time difference for daylight saving time between 1 and 150 minutes.	OFF
Auto Reset	Specify the setting (between 1 and 9 minutes or "OFF") for the desired length of time until the automatic system reset operation is performed.	1 Min.
Date/Time Setting	Specify the date, time and time zone for the machine's internal clock.	—
Set Date	"Set Date" appears only if "Time Adjustment" in the "Admin. Setting" menu is set to "ON".	—

Detail

"Set Date" appears only if "Time Adjustment" in the "Admin. Setting" menu is set to "ON".

Power Save

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Low Power	Specify the desired length of time (between 10 and 240 minutes) until the machine enters Power Save mode.	10 Min.
Sleep Mode	Select whether the machine automatically enters Sleep mode ("ON" and "OFF") and specify the desired length of time (between 15 and 240 minutes) until the machine enters Sleep mode. Depending on the Service Mode setting, the "ON" and "OFF" settings may or may not be available.	15 Min.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Tray Setting

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Auto Tray Select	Specify the paper trays that are selected when the paper tray is automatically changed.	T1, T2, T3, T4, BP
Tray Priority	Specify the priority for selecting the paper trays when the automatic paper-tray-switching operation is performed.	T1, T2, T3, T4, BP
Auto Tray Select	Select whether or not a paper tray loaded with paper of the same size is selected automatically when the paper tray becomes empty.	Permit
No Match. Paper	Select the operation that is performed when there is no paper of the corresponding size in the specified paper tray. • Stop Printing: The machine stops operating. • Switch Trays: The specified paper trays are selected in the specified order of priority and, when the tray runs out of paper, the next paper tray is selected.	Stop Printing

Output Setting

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Print Output	Select whether the machine waits until the first page of a print job is received before starting to print or whether the machine waits until all data is received before starting to print.	Page Print
Page # on Blank	Select whether or not blank pages are printed.	YES
Exit Tray Set	Specify the priority for using the output trays of the finisher.	Main Tray

Detail

"Exit Tray Set" appears only if the Finisher FS-507 is installed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printer Setting

	Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Basic Setting	PDL Setting	Specify the printer description language as “Auto”, “PCL”, or “PS”.	Auto
	Paper Tray	Select the paper tray that is to be used.	Auto
	2-Sided Print	Select whether or not (“ON” or “OFF”) pages are printed on both sides.	OFF
	Bind Direction	Select the binding position for double-sided printing (“Top Bind”, “Left Bind”, or “Right Bind”).	Left Bind
	Staple	Select whether or not (“ON” or “OFF”) pages are to be stapled.	OFF
	Punch	Select whether or not (“ON” or “OFF”) holes are to be punched in the pages.	OFF
	# of Sets	Specify the number of copies to be printed (between 1 and 999).	1
	Paper Size	Select the size of paper that is to be used.	A4
	Org. Direction	Select the orientation of the print image.	Portrait
	Spool Setting	Select whether or not a spool is used. • ON: If another job is received while a job is being performed, the next job is saved on the hard disk. • OFF: The print data is not saved on the hard disk.	ON
	Size Change	Select whether or not (“ON” or “OFF”) paper size substitutions A4 ´ Letter and A3 ´ Ledger are permitted.	ON

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

	Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
PCL Setting	Typeface	Specify the font to be used. Refer to the following page for a list of fonts that correspond to the numbers.	01
	Symbol Set	Specify the symbol set to be used.	Desktop
	Line/Page	Specify the number of lines per page.	64 lines
	Font Size	Specify the font size to be used.	Scalable Font 4.00
	CR/LF Mapping	Specify the substitution method for printing text data. • Mode 1: CR is substituted with CR-LF. • Mode 2: LF is substituted with CR-LF. • Mode 3: Substitute with CR-LF. • OFF: No substitution is performed.	OFF
PS Setting	PS Error Print	Select whether or not error information is printed when an error has occurred during PS rasterization.	Enable

Font List

No.	Font Name	No.	Font Name
0	Courier	40	Helvetica BoldOblique
1	CG Times	41	Helvetica Narrow
2	CG Times Bold	42	Helvetica Narrow Bold
3	CG Times Italic	43	Helvetica Narrow Oblique
4	CG Times Bold Italic	44	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
5	CG Omega	45	Palatino Roman
6	CG Omega Bold	46	Palatino Bold
7	CG Omega Italic	47	Palatino Italic
8	CG Omega Bold Italic	48	Palatino Bold Italic
9	Coronet	49	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
10	Clarendon Condensed	50	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
11	Univers Medium	51	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique
12	Univers Bold	52	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique
13	Univers Medium Italic	53	ITC Bookman Light
14	Univers Bold Italic	54	ITC Bookman Demi
15	Univers Condensed Medium	55	ITC Bookman Light Italic

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

No.	Font Name	No.	Font Name
16	Univers Condensed Bold	56	ITC Bookman Demi Italic
17	Univers Condensed Medium Italic	57	New Century Schoolbook Roman
18	Univers Condensed Bold Italic	58	New Century Schoolbook Bold
19	Antique Olive	59	New Century Schoolbook Italic
20	Antique Olive Bold	60	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
21	Antique Olive Italic	61	Times Roman
22	Garamond Antiqua	62	Times Bold
23	Garamond Halbfett	63	Times Italic
24	Garamond Kursiv	64	Times Bold Italic
25	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	65	ITC Zapf Chancery
26	Marigold	66	Symbol
27	Albertus Medium	67	SymbolPS
28	Albertus Extra Bold	68	Wingdings
29	Arial	69	ITC Zapf Dingbats
30	Arial Bold	70	Courier Bold
31	Arial Italic	71	Courier Italic
32	Arial Bold Italic	72	Courier Bold Italic
33	Times New Roman	73	Letter Gothic
34	Times New Roman Bold	74	Letter Gothic Bold
35	Times New Roman Italic	75	Letter Gothic Italic
36	Times New Roman Bold Italic	76	CourierPS
37	Helvetica	77	CourierPS Bold
38	Helvetica Bold	78	CourierPS Oblique
39	Helvetica Oblique	79	CourierPS Bold Oblique
		80	Line Printer

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Admin. Setting

This section describes the parameters and main settings that can be specified after pressing the [Menu/Select] key, then selecting “Admin. Setting”.

Network Setting

	Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
TCP/IP	TCP/IP Setting	Select whether or not TCP/IP is enabled.	Enable
	Network Speed	Select the operating speed.	Auto
	DHCP Setting	Select this option if a DHCP server is being used.	—
	IP Address	Specify the IP address of the machine.	—
	Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the connected network.	—
	Default Gateway	Specify the default gateway address.	—
	RAW Port No.	Specify the RAW port number.	—
	DNS Host Name	Specify the host name.	—
	DNS Domain Name	Specify the domain name.	—
	Priority DNS	Register the addresses of the DNS servers.	—
	IP Filtering	Specify the settings for IP address filtering.	—
NetWare	NetWare Setting	Select whether or not NetWare is enabled.	Disable
	Ethernet Frame	Select the frame type.	—
	Operation Mode	Select the operating mode for the print server.	—
	Pserver	Select the operating mode for the print server.	—
	NDS/Bindery Set	Select either “Bindery” or “NDS”.	—
	File Server Name	Specify the preferred file server for bindery.	—
	NDS	Specify the NDS settings.	—
	N/R Printer	Specify the printer name and printer number.	—

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

	Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
IPP	IPP Setting	Select whether or not IPP printing is enabled.	Enable
	Accept IPP Job	Select whether or not user IPP jobs are allowed.	Enable
	Printer Name	Specify the name of the printer.	—
	Printer Location	Specify the location of the printer.	—
	Printer Info.	Specify the printer information.	—
	Support Info.	Specify the print operations supported by IPP.	—
SNMP	SNMP Setting	Select whether or not the SMB printing (Windows printing) service is enabled.	Enable
	Read Community	Specify the name of the Read community.	—
	Write Community	Specify the name of the Write community.	—
AppleTalk	AppleTalk Set	Select whether or not AppleTalk is enabled.	Disable
	Printer Name	Specify the name of the printer.	—
	Zone Name	Specify the zone name.	—
PSWC Setting		Select whether or not operations using PageScope Web Connection are possible.	Enable

I/F Setting

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Parallel Timeout	Specify the length of time until a transmission timeout occurs.	15 sec.
Network Timeout	Specify the length of time until a transmission timeout occurs.	15 sec.
USB Timeout	Specify the length of time until a transmission timeout occurs.	15 sec.
Parallel I/F	Specify the mode for using a parallel interface.	ECP
IEEE 1284/USB	Select whether a parallel or USB interface is used.	USB

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Time Adjustment

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
NTP Setting	Select whether or not the time is automatically adjusted through NTP.	OFF
NTP Server Add.	Specify the IP address or DNS name of the NTP server.	—
Port No.	Specify the receiving port number for NTP.	—

User Box Oper.

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Delete User Box	Deletes boxes.	—
Del. Secure Doc.	Deletes confidential documents.	—

Mode List

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Mode List	Prints the list of machine settings.	—

Call Center

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Call Center	Transmits the status of the machine to the center.	—

Security Setting

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Admin. Password	Changes the administrator password.	—
HDD Password	Changes the password for using the hard disk.	—
HDD Setting	Performs operations concerning the hard disk drive, such as deleting data saved on the hard disk.	—

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

IS OpenAPI

Parameters	Description	Initial Setting
Access Setting	Select whether or not IS OpenAPI access is enabled.	Permit
Port No.	Specify the port number.	—
Port No. (SSL)	Specify the port number (SSL).	50003
SSL	Select whether or not SSL is enabled.	ON
Authentication	Select whether or not user authentication is performed.	OFF

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 Loading copy paper

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 Loading copy paper

5.1 Paper

Use paper that meets the following specifications.

Possible paper sizes

Non-standard-sized paper:

Paper Source	Paper Width	Paper Length
Bypass tray	90.0 mm to 311.1 mm	139.7 mm to 457.2 mm
Tray 1		
Tray 2	—	—
Single/Double paper feed cabinets		
LCT		
Double-sided prints	139.7 mm to 311.1 mm	176.0 mm to 457.2 mm

Standard-sized paper:

Paper Source	Paper Size
Bypass tray	A3 ◪ to B6 ◪, A6 ◪, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪), 11 × 17 ◪ to 5-1/2 × 8-1/2 ◪/▯, 8 × 13 ◪ *1, 16K ◪/▯, 8K ◪
Tray 1	A3 ◪ to B6 ◪, A6 ◪, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪), 11 × 17 ◪ to 5-1/2 × 8-1/2 ◪/▯, 8 × 13 ◪ *1, 16K ◪/▯, 8K ◪
Tray 2	A3 ◪ to A5 ◪, 11 × 17 ◪ to 8-1/2 × 11 ◪/▯, 16K ▯, 8K ◪
Single/Double paper feed cabinets	
LCT	A4 ▯
Double-sided prints	A3 ◪ to A5 ◪, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪), 11 × 17 ◪ to 5-1/2 × 8-1/2 ◪, Foolscap (220 mm × 330 mm ◪, 8-1/2 × 13 ◪, 8-1/4 × 13 ◪, 8-1/8 × 13-1/4 ◪, 8 × 13 ◪) *1, 16K ◪/▯, 8K ◪
Finisher FS-603	Exit tray 1: “Group”/“Sort” setting: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪) “Offset/Group” setting, “Offset/Sort” setting: A3 ◪ to A5 ▯ “Offset/Sort/Staple” setting: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯ Punch setting: A3 ◪, A4 ▯ *2 Exit tray 2: A3 ◪ to A4 ◪

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Paper Source	Paper Size
Finisher FS-507	Exit tray 1: “Group”/“Sort” setting: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪) Punch setting: A3 ◪, A4 ▯ Exit tray 2: “Offset/Group” setting, “Offset/Sort” setting: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪) “Staple” setting: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯ Punch setting: A3 ◪, A4 ▯
Job separator	A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯
Print exit tray (standard)	A3 ◪ to B6 ◪, A6 ◪, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪), 11 × 17 ◪ to 5-1/2 × 8-1/2 ◪/▯, 16K ◪/▯, 8K ◪

*1 There are five Foolscap sizes: 220 × 330 mm, 8-1/2 × 13 ◪, 8-1/4 × 13 ◪, 8-1/8 × 13-1/4 ◪ and 8 × 13 ◪. Any one of these sizes can be selected. For details, contact the technical representative.

*2 Can be used when optional punch kit is installed on Finisher FS-603.

Paper types and paper capacities

Plain paper/thick paper

Paper Type **Weight (g/m²)** **Paper Source, Etc.**	**Plain Paper** **60 g/m² to 90 g/m²**	**Thick Paper 1** **91 g/m² to 150 g/m²**	**Thick Paper 2** **151 g/m² to 209 g/m²**	**Thick Paper 3** **210 g/m² to 256 g/m²**
Bypass tray	150 sheets	20 sheets	20 sheets	20 sheets
Tray 1	250 sheets	20 sheets	20 sheets	20 sheets
Tray 2	500 sheets	150 sheets	150 sheets	150 sheets
Single/Double paper feed cabinets	500 sheets/ 1,000 sheets	150 sheets/ 300 sheets	150 sheets/ 300 sheets	150 sheets/ 300 sheets
LCT	2,500 sheets	1,000 sheets	1,000 sheets	1,000 sheets
Double-sided prints	○*1	○	○	○

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Special paper

Paper Type Paper Source, Etc.	Overhead Projector Transparencies	A6cards	Envelopes	Label Sheets
Bypass tray	20 sheets (A4 ▯ only)	20 sheets	10	20 sheets
Tray 1	20 sheets (A4 ▯ only)	20 sheets	10	20 sheets
Tray 2	—	—	—	—
Single/Double paper feed cabinets	—	—	—	—
LCT	—	—	—	—
Double-sided prints	—	—	—	—

*1 64 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2 for double-sided printing

Special paper

Paper other than plain paper, such as overhead projector transparencies and colored paper, is called special paper. Be sure to select a special paper setting for paper trays loaded with media such as overhead projector transparencies and colored paper in order to prevent operating errors.

Paper type settings

Paper Type	Description
Single Side Only	Select this setting when the paper that is loaded should not be used with double-sided printing (for example, when one side has already been printed on). A paper tray with this setting is given priority when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected during double-sided printing.
OHP	Select this setting when overhead projector transparencies are loaded. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.
Special Paper	Select this setting when the paper that is loaded is from a particular manufacturer or special paper that is not usually used. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Paper Type	Description
Thick 1	Select this setting when the thick paper that is loaded has a weight of 91 g/m^2 to 150 g/m^2. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.
Thick 2	Select this setting when the thick paper that is loaded has a weight of 151 g/m^2 to 209 g/m^2. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.
Thick 3	Select this setting when the thick paper that is loaded has a weight of 210 g/m^2 to 256 g/m^2. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.
Letterhead	Select this setting when the paper that is loaded is already printed with a company name or preset text and, therefore, should be differentiated from plain paper. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.
Color Paper	Select this setting when colored paper is loaded. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.
Envelope	Select this setting when envelopes are loaded. A paper tray with this setting is not automatically selected when the “Auto Paper Select” setting is specified or when the paper trays are switched automatically.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Precautions for paper

The following types of paper should not be used, otherwise decreased print quality, paper misfeeds or damage to the machine may occur.

- Overhead projector transparencies that have already been fed through the machine (even if the transparency is still blank)
- Paper that has been printed on by a heat-transfer printer or an inkjet printer
- Paper that is either extremely thick or extremely thin
- Folded, curled, wrinkled, or torn paper
- Paper that has been left unwrapped for a long period of time
- Damp paper, perforated paper, or paper with punched holes
- Extremely smooth or extremely rough paper, or paper with an uneven surface
- Paper that has been treated, such as carbon-backed, heat-sensitive or pressure-sensitive paper
- Paper that has been decorated with foil or embossing
- Paper of a non-standard shape (not rectangular)
- Paper that is bound with glue, staples or paper clips
- Paper with labels attached
- Paper with ribbons, hooks, buttons, etc. attached

Paper storage

Observe the following precautions when storing the paper.

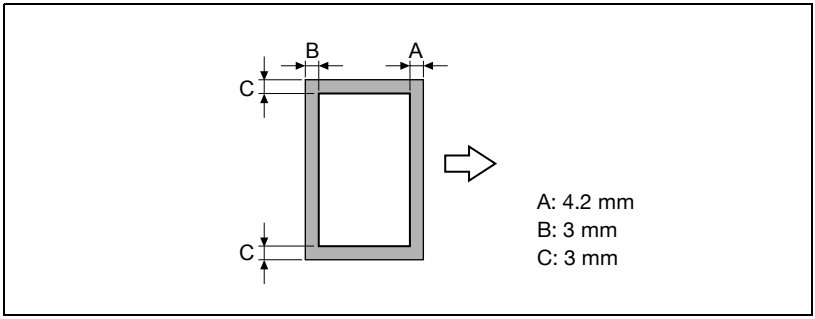
- Store paper in a cool, dark location with little humidity.
- If the paper becomes damp, paper misfeeds may occur.
  Paper that has not been loaded should be kept wrapped or placed in a plastic bag and stored in a cool, dark location with little humidity.
- Store the paper laying flat, not standing on its edge. Curled paper may cause paper misfeeds.
- Keep paper out of the reach of children.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Print area

Any part of the image within the area indicated below is not copied.

- A margin 4.2 mm from the leading edge of the paper (A)
- A margin 3 mm from the trailing edge of the paper (B)
- A margin 3 mm on both sides of the paper (C)



Automatic paper-tray-switching feature

If the selected paper tray runs out of paper while a job is being printed and a different paper tray is loaded with paper meeting the following conditions, the other paper tray is automatically selected so printing can continue. If the optional LCT is installed, a maximum of 3,400 pages (with A4 ▯ paper) can be made continuously. (The paper tray is automatically switched only if the “ATS Permission” parameter in the Utility mode is set to “Permit”.)

Operating conditions

- The paper is the same size.
- The paper is positioned in the same orientation.
- The paper is the same type.
- Paper trays that are selected when the paper tray is automatically switched.

Detail

For details on the specifying the paper trays that are selected when the paper tray is automatically switched, refer to “User Setting” on page 4-24.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Order for selecting the paper trays

As a factory default, when a different paper tray is automatically selected, the next paper drawer in the following list is chosen.

Tray 2➔ Tray 3 ➔ Tray 4 ➔ Tray 1

Detail

To change the order in which the paper trays are selected, refer to “User Setting” on page 4-24.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

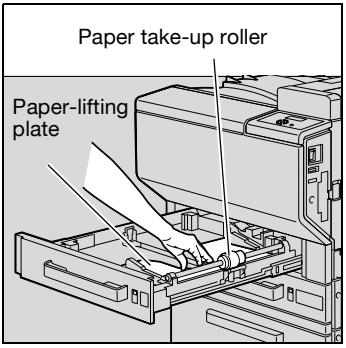
5.2 Loading copy paper

Loading paper into Tray 1

To load paper (Tray 1)

1 Pull out Tray 1.

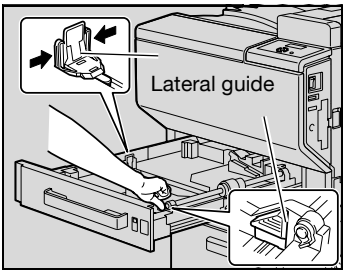
2 Press down on the paper-lifting plate until it locks into place.



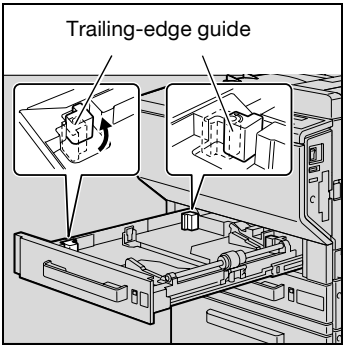
3 Slide the lateral guides to fit the size of paper to be loaded.

? How can paper of a non-standard size be loaded?

➔ First load the paper, and then adjust the lateral guides to the size of the loaded paper.

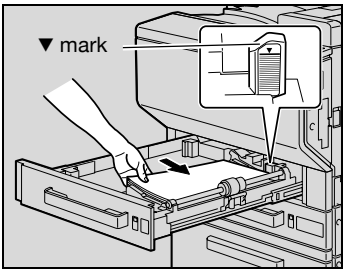


4 For paper exceeding A3 size, adjust the trailing-edge guides as shown in the illustration.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 Load the paper into the tray so that the side of the paper to be printed on (the side facing up when the package was unwrapped) faces up.



– Load letterhead paper so that the side to be printed on faces down.

? What should be done if the paper is curled?

➔ Flatten the paper before loading it.

? How many sheets can be loaded?

➔ No more than 250 sheets of plain paper can be loaded. In addition, no more than 20 sheets of thick paper, 20 overhead projector transparencies, 20 A6cards, 20 label sheets, or 10 envelopes can be loaded.

➔ Do not load so many sheets of plain paper that the top of the stack is higher than the ▼ mark.

6 Close Tray 1.

Detail

When loading paper exceeding A3 size into Tray 1, the paper can have a width up to 311.1 mm and a length up to 457.2 mm.

...

Reminder

Be careful not to touch the surface of the paper take-up roller with your hands.

...

Reminder

If the lateral guides are not positioned correctly for the loaded paper, the paper size will not be correctly detected. Be sure to adjust the lateral guides to the size of the loaded paper.

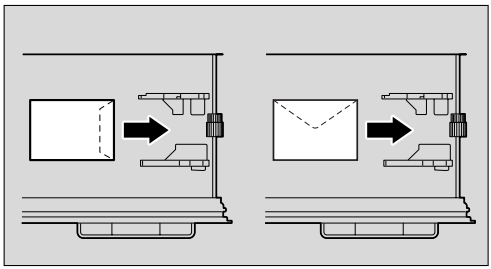
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Reminder

Before loading envelopes, press them down to make sure that all air is removed, and make sure that the folds of the flaps are firmly pressed, otherwise the envelopes may become wrinkled or a paper misfeed may occur.

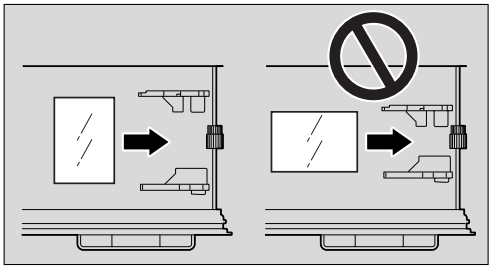
When loading envelopes, load them in the ▭ orientation with the flap side down, as shown in the illustration. If the envelopes are loaded with the flap side up, a paper misfeed may occur. The flap side of envelopes cannot be printed on.



...

Reminder

When loading overhead projector transparencies, load them in the ▯ orientation, as shown in the illustration. Do not load overhead projector transparencies in the ▭ orientation.

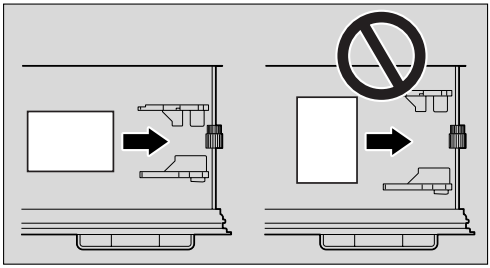


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Reminder

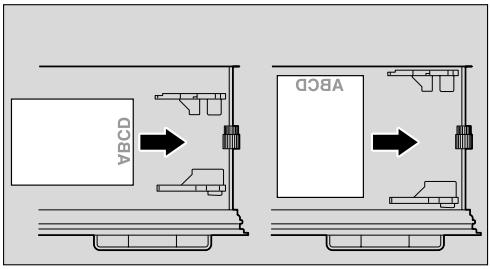
When loading A6cards, load them in the ▭ orientation, as shown in the illustration. Do not load A6cards in the ▯ orientation.



...

Reminder

Be sure to load letterhead paper so that the side to be printed on faces down.



Detail

For details on specifying the paper size for Tray 1, refer to “User Setting” on page 4-24.

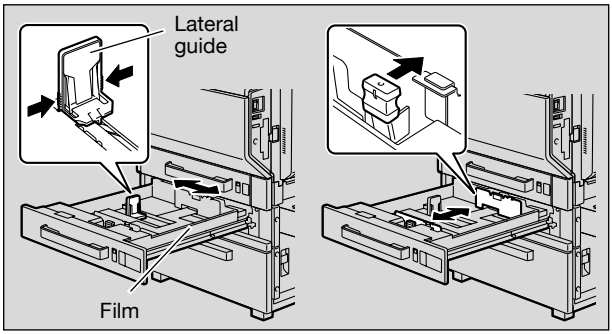
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Loading paper into Tray 2, 3, or 4

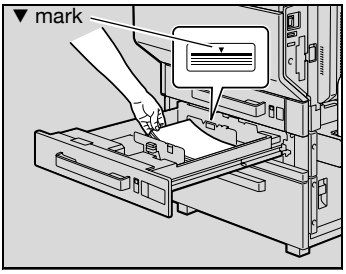
To load paper (Tray 2, 3, or 4)

1 Pull out the paper tray.

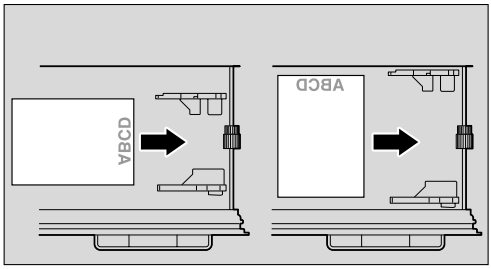
2 Slide the lateral guides to fit the size of paper to be loaded.



3 Load the paper into the tray so that the side of the paper to be printed on (the side facing up when the package was unwrapped) faces up.



– Load letterhead paper so that the side to be printed on faces down.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

? What should be done if the paper is curled?
➔ Flatten the paper before loading it.

? How many sheets can be loaded?
➔ No more than 500 sheets of plain paper can be loaded. In addition, no more than 150 sheets of thick paper can be loaded.

➔ Do not load so many sheets of plain paper that the top of the stack is higher than the ▼ mark.

4 Close the paper tray.

...
Reminder
If the lateral guides are not positioned correctly for the loaded paper, the paper size will not be correctly detected. Be sure to adjust the lateral guides to the size of the loaded paper.

...
Reminder
For details on the paper that can be loaded into Tray 2, 3, and 4, refer to "Paper" on page 5-3.

...
Reminder
Be careful not to touch the film.

...
Note
To print on overhead projector transparencies and envelopes, use the by-pass tray or the Tray 1.

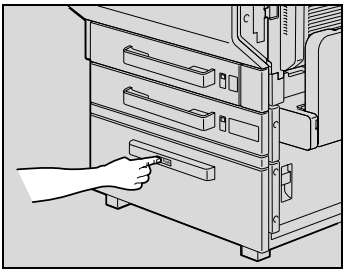
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Loading paper into the LCT

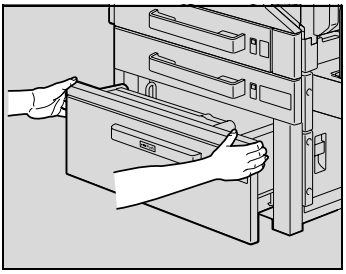
To load paper (LCT)

✔ If the machine is turned off with the power switch, the paper tray for the LCT cannot be pulled out, even after the tray release button is pressed. Be sure to first turn on the machine.

1 Press the tray release button.



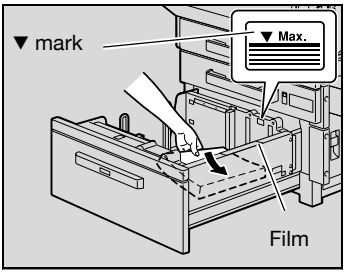
2 Pull out the LCT.



3 Load the paper into the right side of the LCT so that the side of the paper to be printed on (the side facing up when the package was unwrapped) faces up.

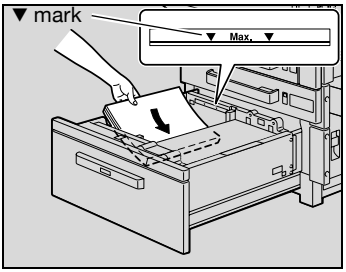
? What should be done if the paper is curled?

➔ Flatten the paper before loading it.

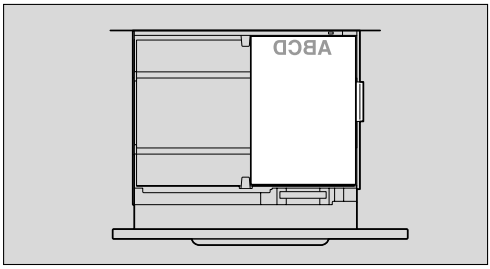


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

4 Load the paper into the left side of the LCT so that the side of the paper to be printed on (the side facing up when the package was unwrapped) faces up.



– Load letterhead paper so that the side to be printed on faces down.



5 Close the LCT.

...

Reminder

Be careful not to touch the film.

Do not load so many sheets of paper that the top of the stack is higher than the ▼ mark.

For details on the paper that can be loaded into the LCT, refer to "Paper" on page 5-3.

...

Note

If the machine has entered Low Power mode or Sleep mode, the LCT cannot be pulled out, even after the tray release button is pressed. Be sure to first cancel Low Power mode or Sleep mode.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

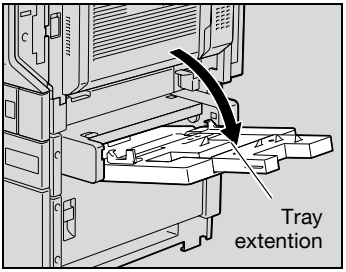
Loading paper into the bypass tray

Paper can be fed manually through the bypass tray if you wish to print onto paper that is not loaded into a paper tray, or if you wish to print onto thick paper, postcards, envelopes, overhead projector transparencies or label sheets.

To load paper (bypass tray)

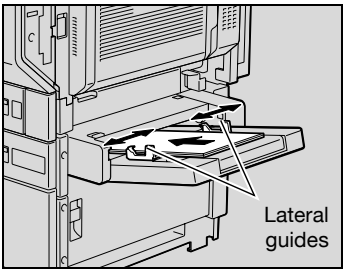
1 Open the bypass tray.

– When loading large-sized paper, pull out the tray extension.



2 With the side to be printed on facing down, insert the paper as much as possible into the feed slot.

3 Slide the lateral guides to fit the size of paper being loaded.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Reminder

Do not load so many sheets that the top of the stack is higher than the ▼ mark.

Push the paper guides firmly up against the edges of the paper.

If the paper is curled, flatten it before loading it.

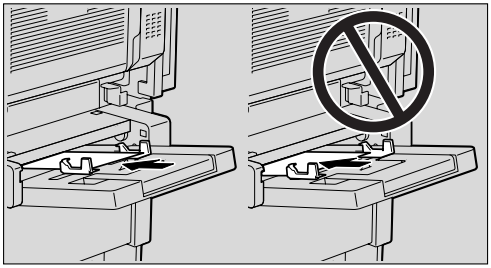
...

Reminder

When loading A6cards, load them in the ▭ orientation, as shown in the illustration. Do not load A6cards in the ▯ orientation.

A maximum of 20 A6cards can be loaded into the bypass tray.

If label sheets are loaded, select “Thick 1”.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Reminder

When loading overhead projector transparencies, load them in the ▯ orientation, as shown in the illustration. Do not load overhead projector transparencies in the ▭ orientation.

A maximum of 20 overhead projector transparencies can be loaded into the bypass tray.

...

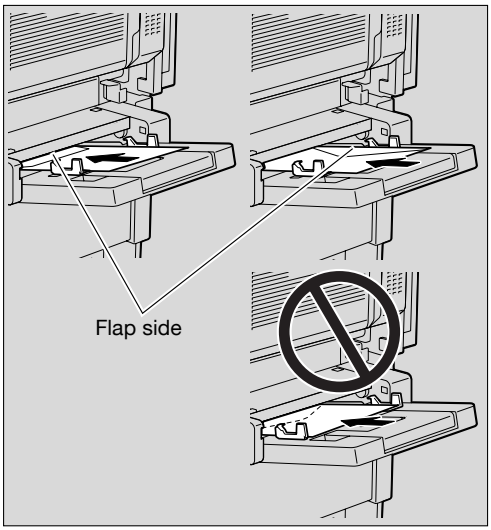
Reminder

Before loading envelopes, press them down to make sure that all air is removed, and make sure that the folds of the flaps are firmly pressed, otherwise the envelopes may become wrinkled or a paper misfeed may occur.

When loading envelopes, load them with the flap side up, as shown in the illustration. If the envelopes are loaded with the flap side down, a paper misfeed may occur. The flap side of envelopes cannot be printed on.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

A maximum of 10 envelopes can be loaded into the bypass tray.



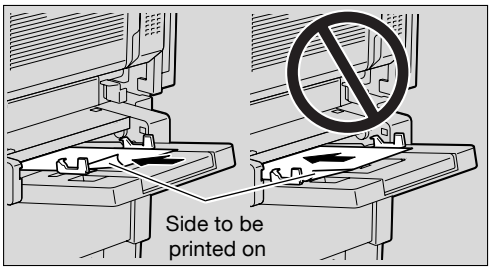
...

Reminder

When loading label sheets, load them in the ▭ orientation, as shown in the illustration. Do not load label sheets in the ▯ orientation.

A maximum of 20 label sheets can be loaded into the bypass tray.

If A6cards are loaded, select "Thick 3".



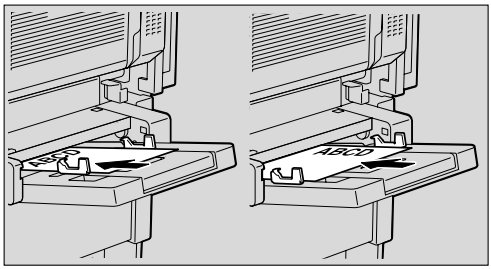
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Reminder

Be sure to load letterhead paper so that the side to be printed on faces up.

When printing on paper other than plain paper, specify the paper type from the printer driver.



...

Note

The image will be printed on the surface of the paper facing down when the paper is loaded into the bypass tray.

Detail

For details on specifying the paper size for the bypass tray, refer to “Paper Tray” on page 4-24.

For details on the paper sizes, refer to “Paper” on page 5-3.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5.3 Specifying finishing settings

If the optional finisher is installed, the machine can be set to finish the pages after printing them.

The Finishing settings can be specified from the printer driver.

Stapling prints (Staple settings)

Detail

In order for the prints to be stapled, all of the following conditions must be met.

The paper width must be between 182 mm and 297 mm.

The paper length must be between 182 mm and 432 mm.

When Finisher FS-603 is installed

Paper Weight	Paper Size	Loading Capacity (detected with either measurement)	
60 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2	A4 ▭/▯, B5 ▭/▯	1,000 sheets	150 mm
	A3 ▭, B4 ▭	500 sheets	75 mm

Number of bound pages with Finisher FS-603

	Number of Bound Pages	Maximum Number of Sets		
		One place towards the back	One place towards the front	Two places
A4 ▭ or smaller	2 sheets	100 sets	40 sets	40 sets
	3 to 5 sheets	80 sets	40 sets	40 sets
	6 to 10 sheets	60 sets	40 sets	40 sets
	11 to 20 sheets	30 sets	30 sets	30 sets
	21 to 30 sheets	30 sets	30 sets	30 sets
	31 to 50 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets
B4 ▭ or larger	2 sheets	100 sets	50 sets	50 sets
	3 to 5 sheets	80 sets	40 sets	40 sets
	6 to 10 sheets	40 sets	40 sets	40 sets
	11 to 20 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets
	21 to 25 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets	30 sets/1,000 sheets

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

When Finisher FS-507 is installed

Paper Weight	Paper Size	Loading Capacity (detected with either measurement)	
60 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2	A4 ▭/▯, B5 ▭/▯	3,000 sheets	375 mm
	A3 ▭, B4 ▭	1,500 sheets	187.5 mm

Number of bound pages with Finisher FS-507

Number of Bound Pages	Maximum Number of Sets	
2 sheets	100 sets	200 sheets
3 to 5 sheets	80 sets	400 sheets
6 to 10 sheets	60 sets	600 sheets
11 to 20 sheets	40 sets	800 sheets
21 to 30 sheets	60 sets	1,800 sheets
31 to 40 sheets	60 sets	2,400 sheets
41 to 50 sheets	60 sets	3,000 sheets

Punching holes in prints (Punch settings)

Detail

In order for holes to be punched in the prints, all of the following conditions must be met.

The paper width must be between 182 mm and 297 mm.

The paper length must be between 182 mm and 432 mm.

When Finisher FS-603 is installed

Paper Weight	Paper Size
60 g/m^2 to 209 g/m^2	A3 ▭, A4 ▯

When Finisher FS-507 is installed

Paper Weight	Paper Size
60 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2	A3 ▭, A4 ▯

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5.4 Specifying center binding

When Finisher FS-603 is installed.

Paper Weight	Paper Size	Number of Bound Pages
60 g/m^2 to 90 g/m^2	A3 ◪, B4 ◪, A4 ◪	2 sheets to 15 sheets*

Number of bound pages with Finisher FS-603

Number of Bound Pages	Maximum Number of Sets
2 sheets to 5 sheets	20 sets
6 sheets to 10 sheets	10 sets
11 sheets to 15 sheets*	10 sets

* The number of sheets that can be bound together differs depending on the paper weight.
64 g/m^2 paper: 15 sheets
80 g/m^2 paper: 10 sheets

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 Replacing consumables

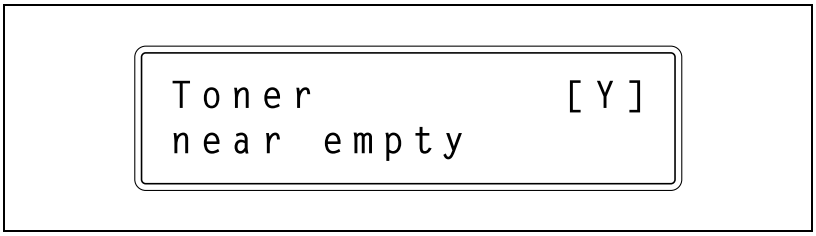
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 Replacing consumables

6.1 Replacing the toner cartridge

When the toner is about to run out, the advanced warning message shown below appears.

Example: Message when the yellow toner is about to run out



Detail

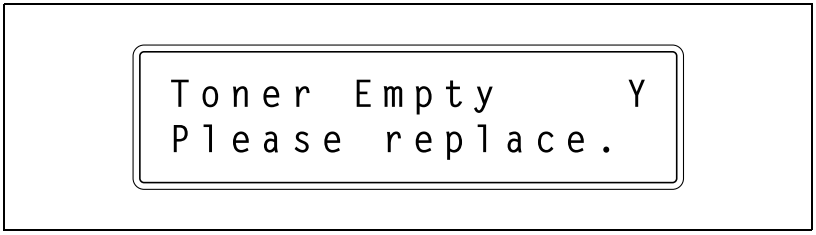
About 1000 (A4) pages can be printed after the message "Toner near empty" appears.

When the message appears, prepare to replace the toner cartridge according to your maintenance agreement.

When the message "Toner Empty" appears, the machine stops operating.

When the toner is empty, the warning message shown below appears and printing is no longer possible.

Example: Message indicating that the yellow toner is empty (if replaceable by the user)



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Note

When the message appears, replace the toner cartridge according to your maintenance agreement.

When the message "Toner Empty Call Service." appears, contact the service representative.

⚠ CAUTION

Handling toner and the toner cartridges

➔ Do not throw toner or the toner cartridge into a fire.

➔ Toner expelled from the fire may cause burns.

⚠ CAUTION

Precautions for toner spills

➔ Be careful not to spill toner inside the machine or get toner on your clothes or hands.

➔ If your hands become soiled with toner, immediately wash them with soap and water.

➔ If toner gets in your eyes, immediately flush them with water, and then seek professional medical attention.

Reminder

Do not replace the toner cartridge until the message "Toner Empty" appears. In addition, do not replace the toner cartridge of any color other than the one indicated in the message on the control panel.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

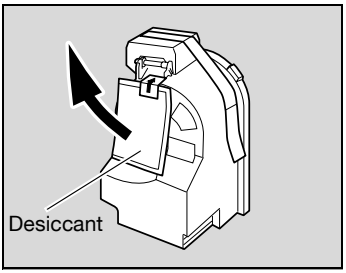
To replace the toner cartridge

The procedure for replacing any of the toner cartridges (yellow (Y), magenta (M), cyan (C) or black (K)) is the same.

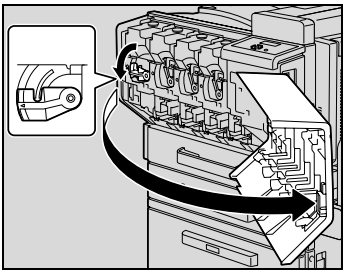
Example: Replacing the yellow toner cartridge

✔ When replacing the black toner cartridge, be sure to replace filter 2. A new filter 2 is included in the package with the black toner cartridge.

✔ Desiccant is attached to the black toner cartridge. Be sure to remove the desiccant before installing the toner cartridge into the machine.



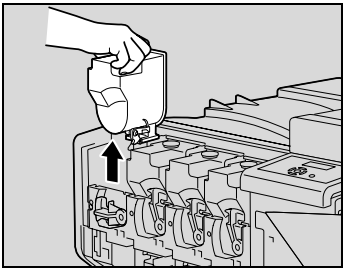
1 Open the front door, and then swing down counterclockwise the toner-cartridge-securing lever for the toner cartridge that you wish to replace.



2 Pull out the empty toner cartridge.

? How should used toner cartridges be disposed of?

➔ Do not throw away used toner cartridges. Instead, keep them in their boxes to be collected by your technical representative.



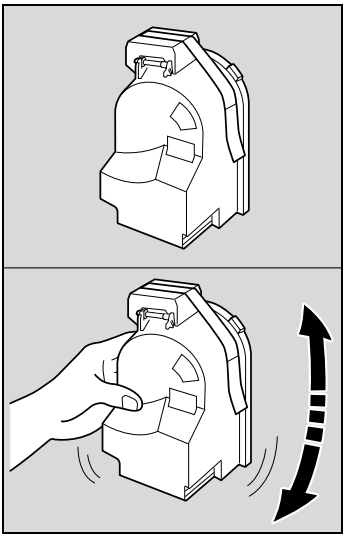
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

3 Prepare the new toner cartridge.

– Check that the color of the toner in the cartridge is the same color as the toner-cartridge-securing lever.

? What happens if the toner cartridge of a different color is installed?

➔ The toner cartridge of a color different than the one that was removed cannot be installed. If the wrong toner cartridge is installed with extreme force, the machine may be damaged.



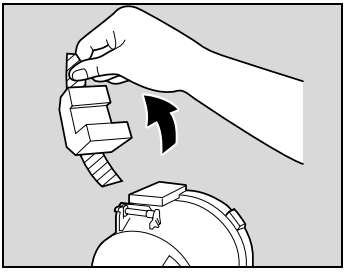
4 Shake the new toner cartridge well.

– The toner within the toner cartridge may have become compacted. If it has, be sure to shake the toner cartridge until the toner is mostly broken up before installing the cartridge.

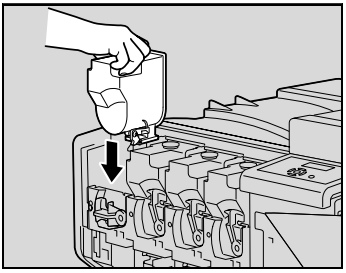
5 Peel off the tape, and then remove the protective cap.

? What are the precautions for peeling off the tape?

➔ Peel off the tape slowly. If the tape is removed with too much force, toner may spurt out.



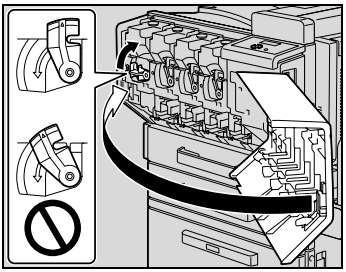
6 Position the toner cartridge as shown, and then insert it into its compartment.



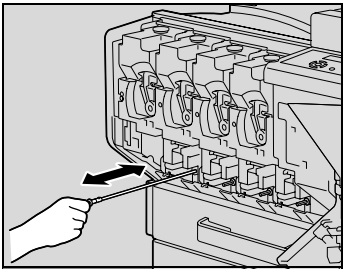
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

7 Swing the toner-cartridge-securing lever up clockwise.

– Make sure that the toner-cartridge-securing lever is fully swung up, as shown, otherwise the front door cannot be closed.



8 Slowly pull out the charger-cleaning tool as far as possible.
Next, slowly push in the charger-cleaning tool as much as possible.
Repeat the above operations three times.



9 Securely insert the charger-cleaning tool, and then close the front door.

? Why can't the door be closed securely?

→ The toner-cartridge-securing lever may not be in its correct position. Check that the toner-cartridge-securing lever is correctly positioned.

...

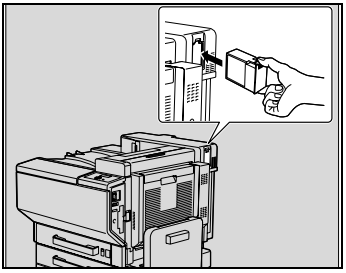
Reminder

Be careful about the installation location of the toner cartridges, since it is different for other colors.

...

Reminder

When installing the new filter 2, fully insert it until it snaps into place.

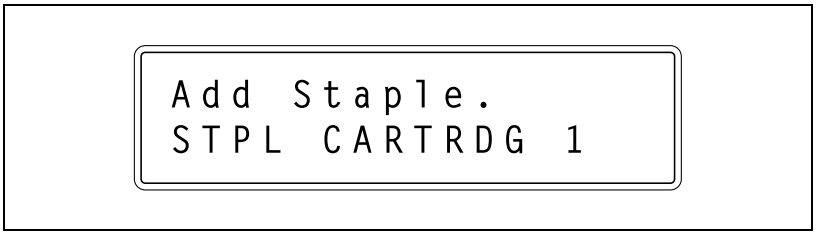


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6.2 Replacing the staples

When Finisher FS-507 or FS-603 is installed and is about to run out of staples, the message shown below appears.

Example: When Finisher FS-603 is installed

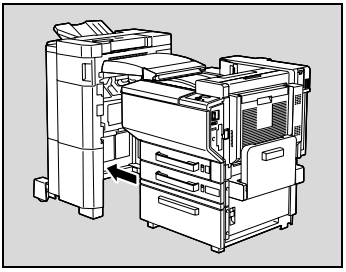


Detail

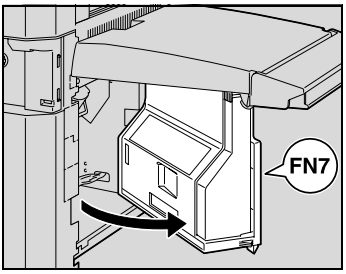
Be sure to replace the staple cartridge only after the message appears, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

To replace the staple cartridge for Finisher FS-507

1 Slide the finisher away from the machine.

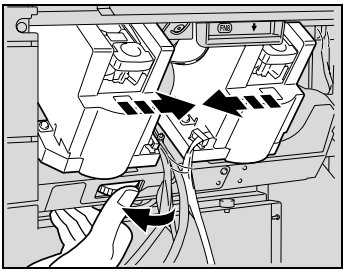


2 Open the right-side door FN7.

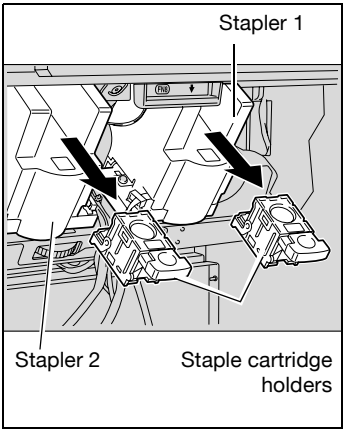


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

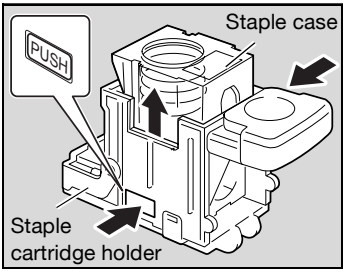
3 Turn the jammed-staple-clearing dial to the left in order to position stapler 1 and stapler 2 at the center.



4 Pull the staple cartridge holder toward you from stapler 1 or stapler 2.

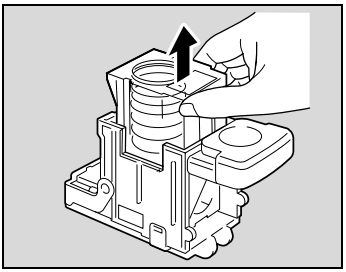


5 Press the button marked “PUSH” on the side of the staple cartridge holder.
The staple case is released.

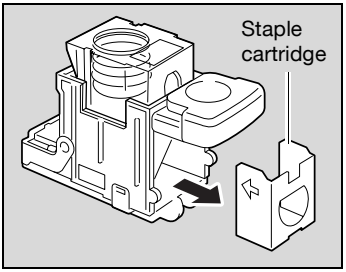


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 Pull up the staple case.

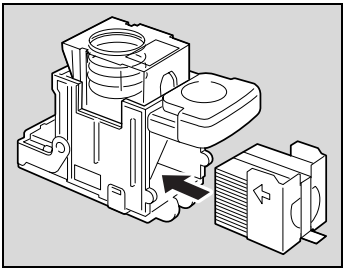


7 Remove the staple cartridge from the staple case.

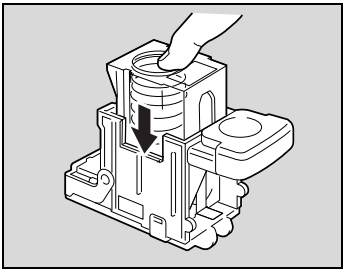


8 Load the new staple cartridge into the staple cartridge holder.

– Fully insert the staple cartridge as far as possible.

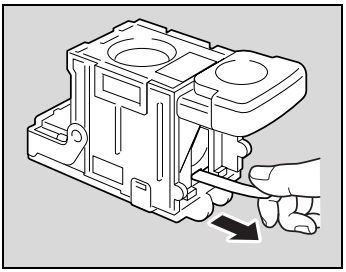


9 Press the staple case down.

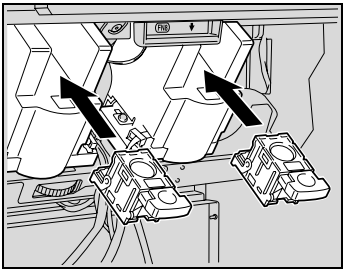


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10 Peel the tape off of the staple cartridge.



11 Insert the staple cartridge holder until it locks into place.



12 Close the right-side door FN7.

13 Slide the finisher back against the machine.

...

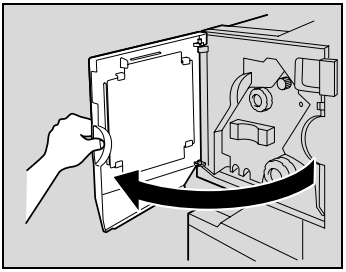
Reminder

Be sure to replace the staple cartridge only after the message appears, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To replace the staple cartridge for Finisher FS-603

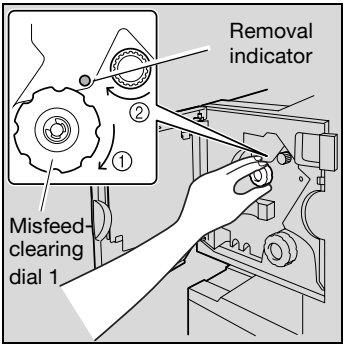
1 Open the front door of the finisher.



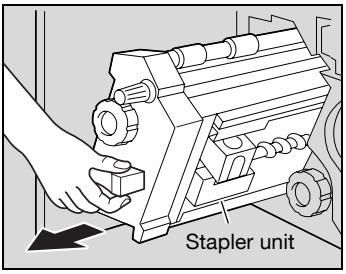
2 Turn misfeed-clearing dial 1 clockwise until the removal indicator is completely blue.

? What should be done if misfeed-clearing dial 1 is turned too far?

➔ Turn misfeed-clearing dial 1 counterclockwise to finely adjust it.

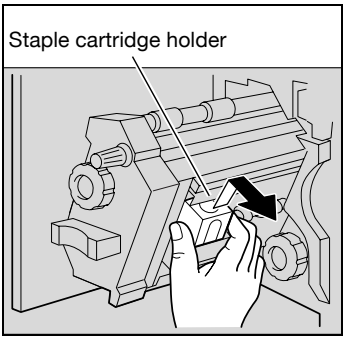


3 Slowly pull out the stapler unit as far as possible.

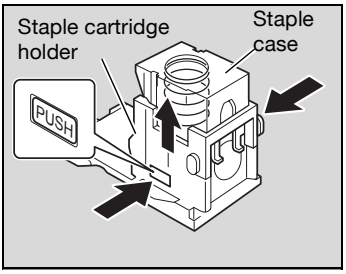


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

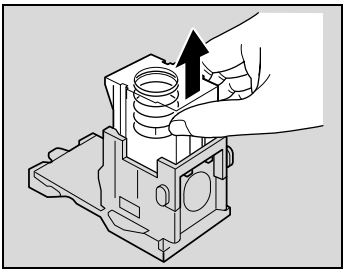
4 Grasp both sides of the staple cartridge holder, lift it up, and then pull it out.



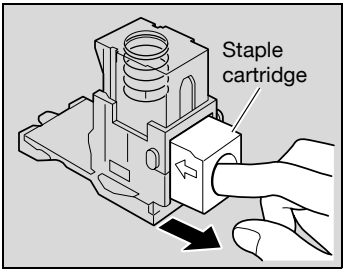
5 Press the button marked “PUSH” on the side of the staple cartridge holder.
The staple case is released.



6 Pull up the staple case.



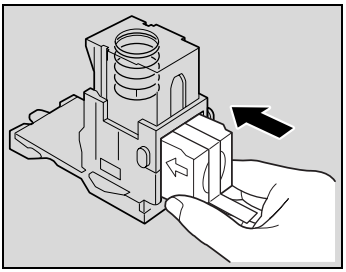
7 Remove the staple cartridge from the staple case.



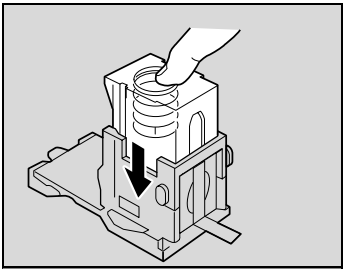
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8 Load the new staple cartridge into the staple cartridge holder.

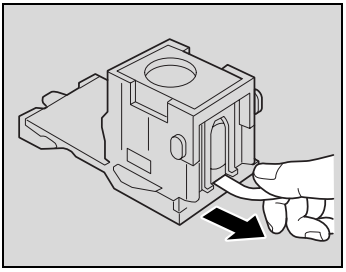
– Fully insert the staple cartridge as far as possible.



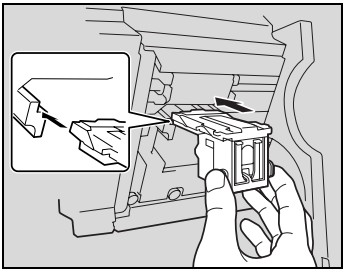
9 Press the staple case down.



10 Peel the tape off of the staple cartridge.



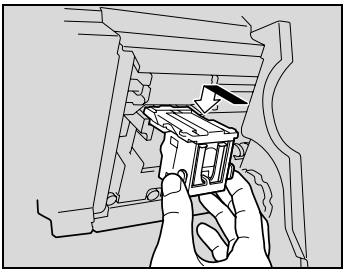
11 Insert the staple cartridge holder, making sure the tabs on the holder slide along the rails in the compartment.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

12 Insert the staple cartridge holder until it locks into place.

– Check that the staple cartridge holder is securely installed.



13 Carefully move the stapler unit back into its original position.

14 Close the front door.

...

Reminder

Be sure to replace the staple cartridge only after the message appears, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

7 Maintenance

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

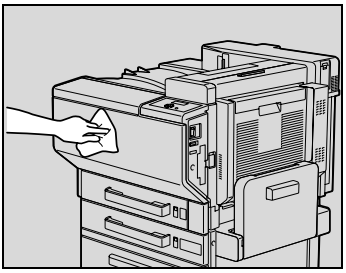
7 Maintenance

7.1 Cleaning

This section describes the procedures for cleaning each part.

Housing

1 Clean the surface of the housing by wiping it with a soft cloth dampened with a mild household detergent.



...

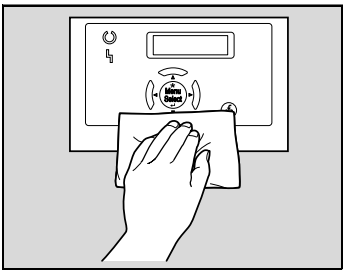
Reminder

Be sure to turn off the machine (set the power switch to "○") before cleaning it.

Never use solvents, such as benzene or thinner, to clean the housing.

Control panel

➔ Clean the control panel by wiping it with a soft, dry cloth.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

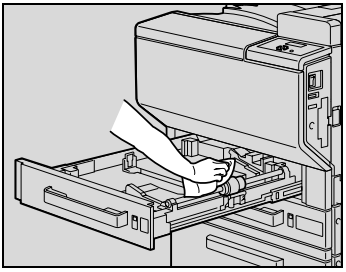
...

Reminder

Pressing too hard on a key in the control panel may damage it. In addition, never use a mild household detergent, glass cleaner, benzene or thinner to clean the control panel.

Paper take-up roller

➔ Clean the paper take-up rollers by wiping them with a soft, dry cloth.



...

Reminder

Never use solvents, such as benzene or thinner, to clean the prints take-up roller.

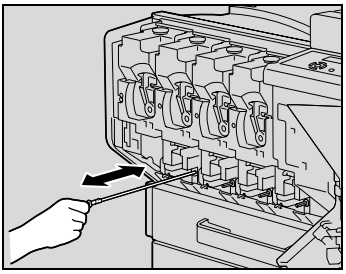
Electrostatic charger

If the electrostatic charger is dirty, streaks will appear though the prints. If this occurs, follow the procedure described below to clean the charger.

1 Open the machine's front door.

2 Slowly pull out the charger-cleaning tool as far as possible. Next, slowly push in the charger-cleaning tool as much as possible. Repeat the above operations three times.

– Perform this same operation to clean each of the other electrostatic chargers.

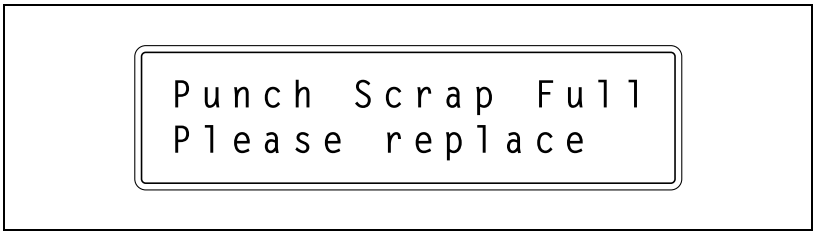


3 Securely insert each charger-cleaning tool, and then close the front door.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Emptying the waste containers

If the hole-punch waste container in punch kit installed on Finisher FS-603 becomes full, the message shown below appears (if it can be emptied by the user).



...

Note

No message appears if the hole-punch waste container in Finisher FS-507 becomes full.

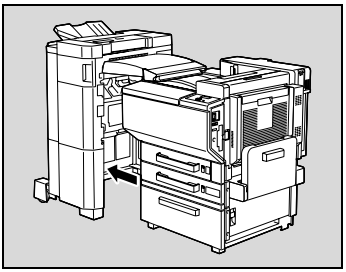
Periodically check the volume of the contents of the hole-punch waste container.

When the message "Punch Scrap Full Call Service." appears, contact the service representative.

To empty the hole-punch waste container in Finisher FS-507

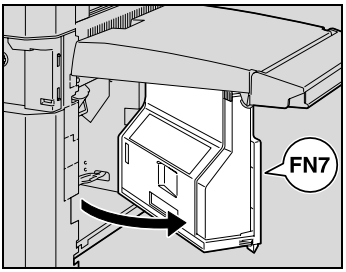
Follow the procedure described below to empty the hole-punch waste container.

1 Slide the finisher away from the machine.

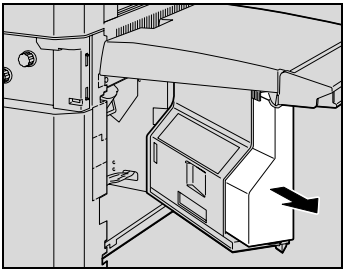


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

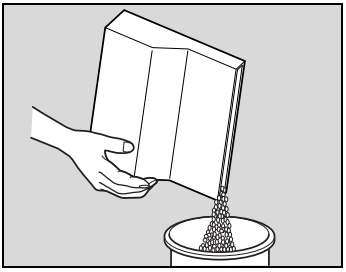
2 Open the right-side door FN7.



3 Pull out the hole-punch waste container.



4 Empty the hole-punch waste container.



5 Install the hole-punch waste container into its original position.

6 Close the right-side door FN7.

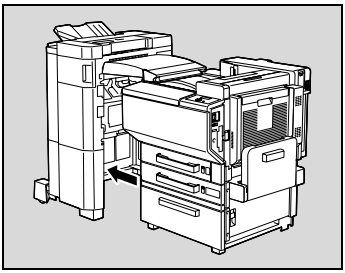
7 Slide the finisher back against the machine.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

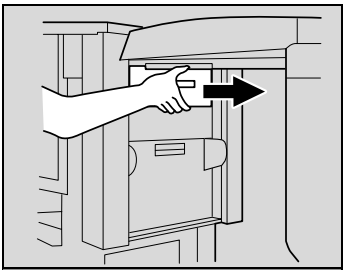
To empty the hole-punch waste container in Finisher FS-603

Follow the procedure described below to empty the hole-punch waste container.

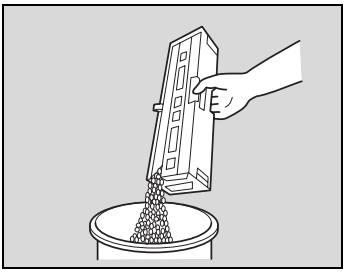
1 Slide the finisher away from the machine.



2 Pull out the hole-punch waste container.



3 Empty the hole-punch waste container.



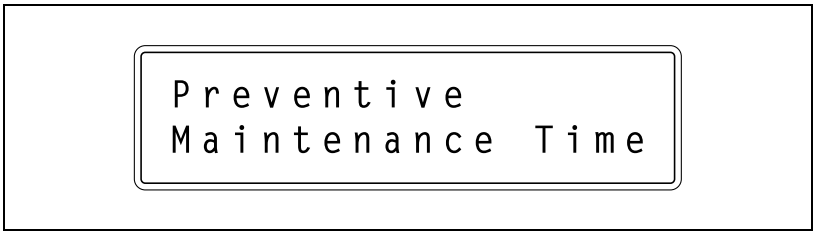
4 Install the hole-punch waste container into its original position.

5 Slide the finisher back against the machine.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

7.2 When the message “Preventive Maintenance Time” appears

If the message “Preventive Maintenance Time” appears, contact your technical representative and request a periodic maintenance inspection.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

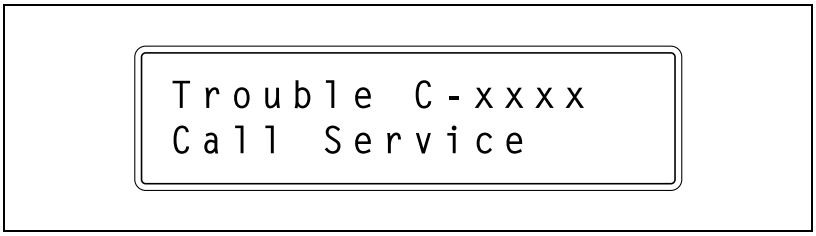
8 Troubleshooting

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8 Troubleshooting

8.1 When the message “Trouble” appears (call technical representative)

If a malfunction that cannot be corrected by the user occurred, the message “Trouble C-xxxx Call Service.” appears. (call technical representative screen)

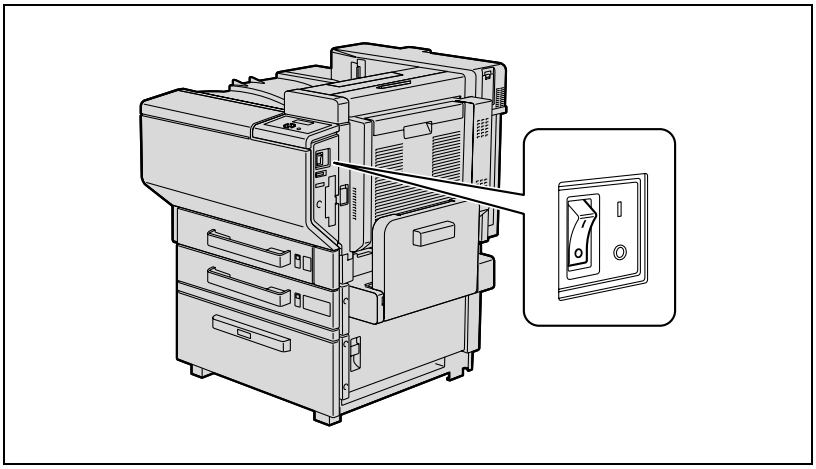


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To call the technical representative

1 Write down the malfunction code (for example, C-0001) in the call technical representative screen.

2 Use the power switch to turn off the machine.



3 Unplug the machine.

4 Contact the technical representative, and inform them of the malfunction code.

...

Reminder

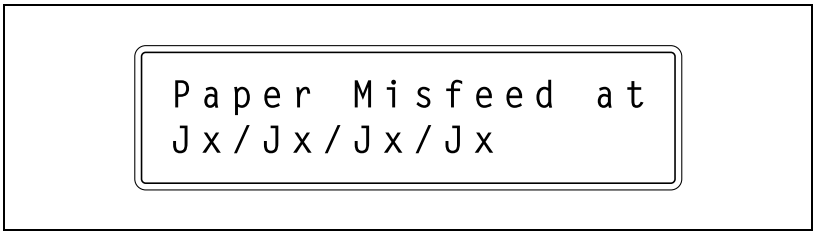
Since the machine may be damaged, contact the technical representative according to the procedure described above as soon as the call technical representative screen appears.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8.2 When the message “Paper Misfeed at” appears

If a misfeed occurs during printing, the message “Paper Misfeed at” appears and the location of the misfeed is indicated in the screen. (misfeed screen)

At this time, printing cannot continue until the misfeed is adequately cleared.



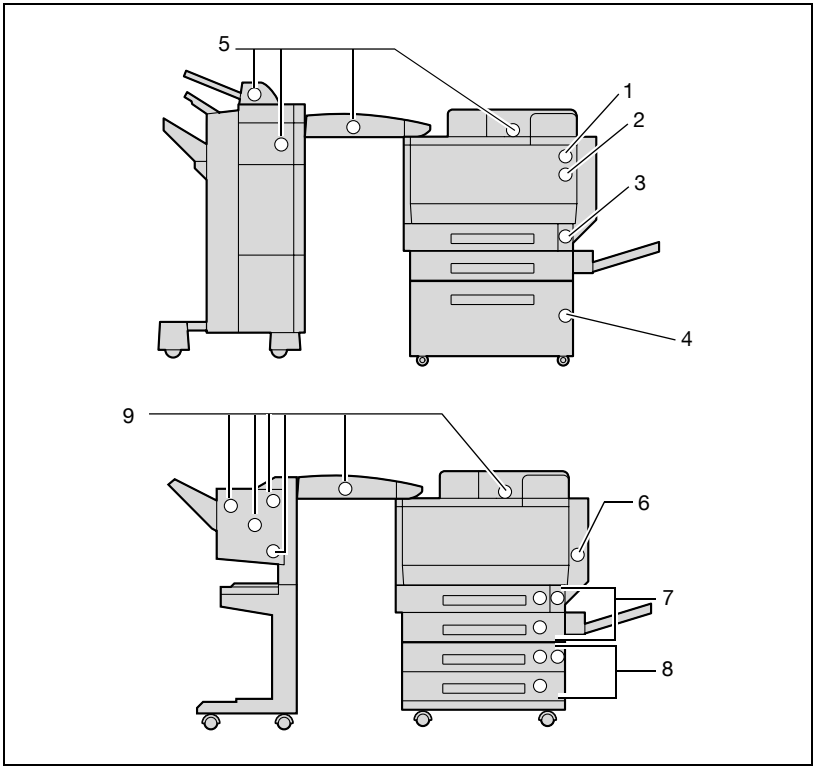
...

Note

The procedure for clearing a misfed paper differs depending on where the misfeed occurs. Determine the misfeed location, and then clear the misfeed according to the appropriate procedure.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Paper misfeed indications

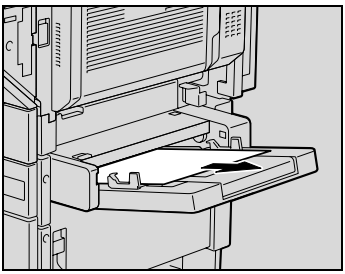


No.		Description
1	JG, JH	A paper misfeed in the fusing unit (p. 8-16)
2	JF, JG	A paper misfeed in the right-side door unit/right-side door (p. 8-13)
3	JE	A paper misfeed in the bypass tray (p. 8-7)
4	JC	A paper misfeed in the LCT (p. 8-12)
5	JJ, JK, JL, JT	A paper misfeed in Finisher FS-507/job separator (p. 8-19)
6	JI	A paper misfeed in the automatic duplex unit (p. 8-9)
7	JA, JB	A paper misfeed in the Tray 1 or 2 (p. 8-10)
8	JC, JD	A paper misfeed in the Tray 3 or 4 (p. 8-11)
9	JJ, JK, JQ JR, JS	A paper misfeed in Finisher FS-603 (p. 8-23)

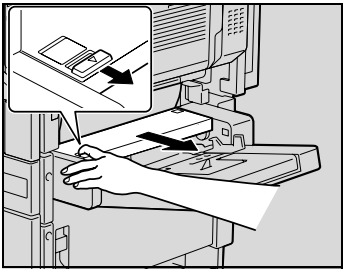
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in the bypass tray

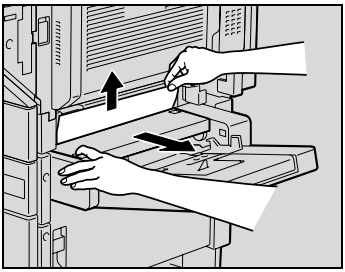
1 Remove all paper from the bypass tray.



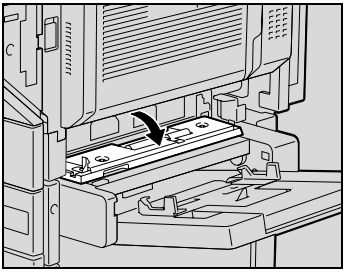
2 If misfed paper cannot be pulled out, pull the lever for the sliding plate of the bypass tray, and then pull the sliding plate toward you.



3 Pull the sliding plate toward you, and then carefully pull out any misfed paper.

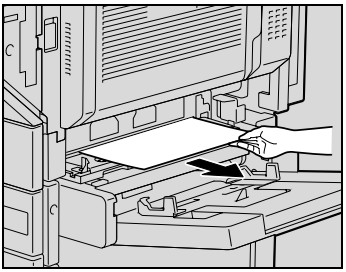


4 Pull the lever, and then open the right-side door of Tray 1.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 Carefully pull out any misfed paper.



6 Close the right-side door.

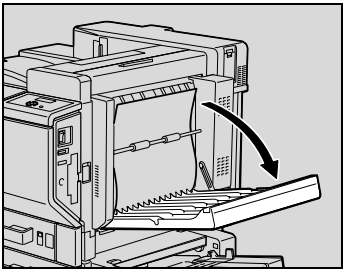
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to "Paper misfeed indications" on page 8-6.

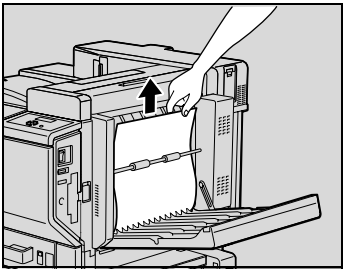
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in the automatic duplex unit

1 Open the automatic duplex unit door.



2 Carefully pull out any misfed paper.



3 Close the automatic duplex unit door.

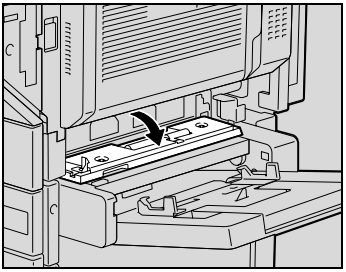
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to "Paper misfeed indications" on page 8-6.

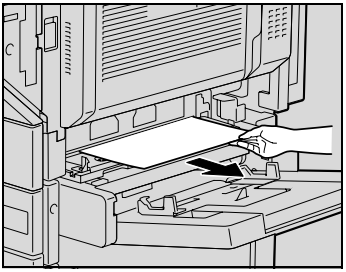
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in Tray 1 or 2

1 Pull the lever, and then open the right-side door of Tray 1.



2 Carefully pull out any misfed paper.



3 Close the right-side door.

4 Pull out the paper tray, and then remove any misfed paper.

5 Close the paper tray.

...

Reminder

Be careful not to touch the surface of the paper take-up roller (in Tray 1) or the film (in Tray 2) with your hands.

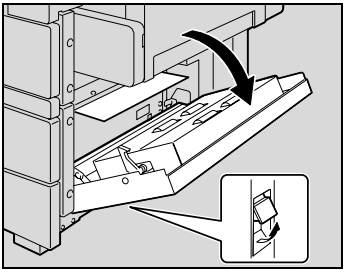
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to "Paper misfeed indications" on page 8-6.

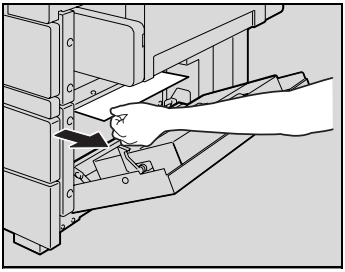
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in a paper tray (Tray 3 or 4)

1 Pull up the lever, and then open the right-side door of the paper tray (Tray 3 or 4).



2 Carefully pull out any misfed paper.



3 Close the right-side door.

4 Pull out the paper tray, and then remove any misfed paper.

5 Close the paper tray.

...

Reminder

Be careful not to touch the film.

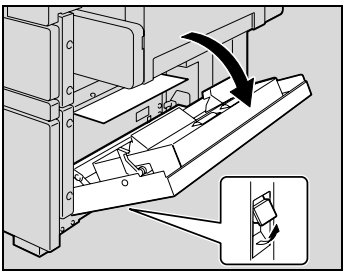
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to "Paper misfeed indications" on page 8-6.

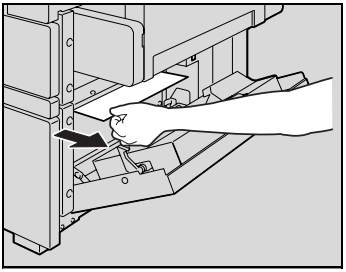
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in the LCT

1 Pull up the lever, and then open the right-side door of the LCT.



2 Carefully pull out any misfed paper.



3 Close the right-side door of the LCT.

4 Press the tray release button, pull out the LCT, and then remove any misfed paper.

5 Closer the LCT.

...

Reminder

Be careful not to touch the film.

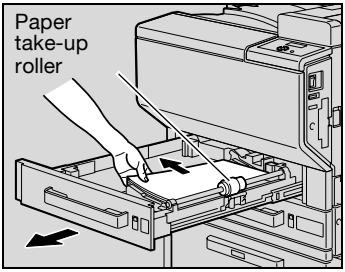
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to "Paper misfeed indications" on page 8-6.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

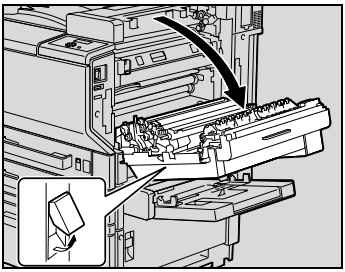
To clear a paper misfeed in the right-side door

1 Pull out the paper tray being used, and then remove any paper remaining in the tray.

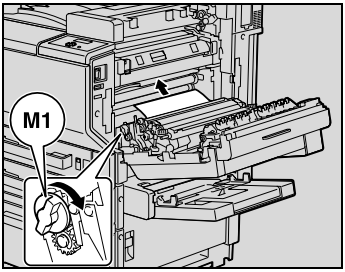


2 Load the paper into the paper tray again, and then close the tray.

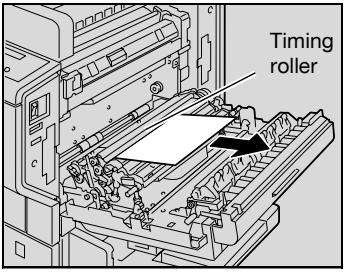
3 Pull up the right-side door release lever, and then open the right-side door.



4 Turn knob M1 on the inside of the right-side door clockwise to feed out the paper.



5 Pull out any paper caught in the timing roller section.

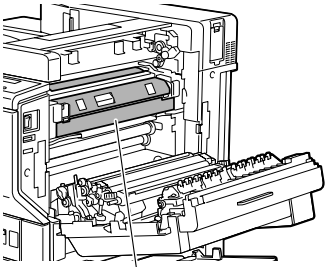


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

⚠ CAUTION

The area around the fusing unit is extremely hot.

➔Touching anything other than the indicated levers and dials may result in burns. If you get burnt, immediately cool the skin under cold water, and then seek professional medical attention.



Fusing unit

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Reminder

If the paper is misfed as described below, contact your technical representative.

The paper is wrapped around the timing roller.

The paper is folded or shredded by the timing roller.

...

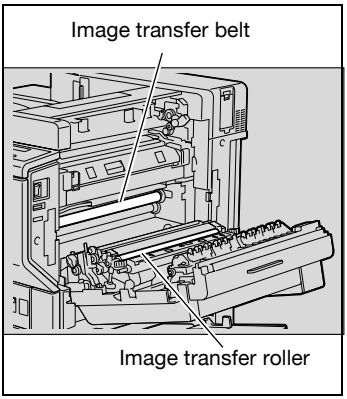
Reminder

Be careful not to touch the surface of the paper take-up roller (in Tray 1) or the film (in Tray 2, 3, and 4 and in the LCT) with your hands.

...

Reminder

Decreased print quality may result if the surface of the image transfer belt or the image transfer roller is touched. Be careful not to touch the surface of the image transfer belt or the image transfer roller.



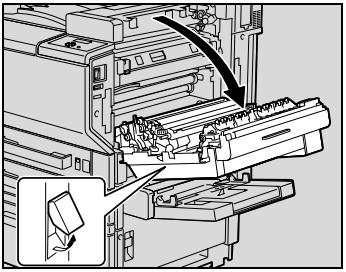
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to “Paper misfeed indications” on page 8-6.

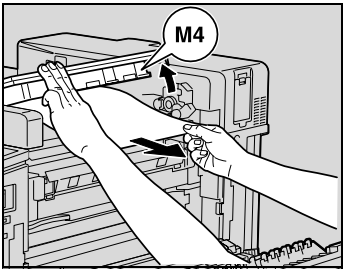
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in the fusing unit

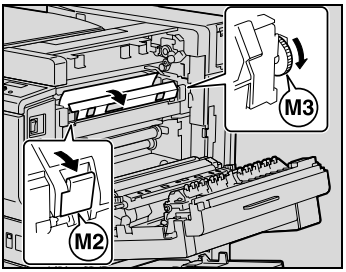
1 Pull up the right-side door release lever, and then open the main unit right-side door.



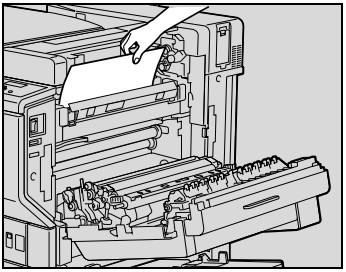
2 Lift up inside cover M4, and then pull out any misfed paper.



3 Pull lever M2 down toward you. Then, turn dial M3 to feed out the paper.



4 Pull out any paper caught in the fusing unit.



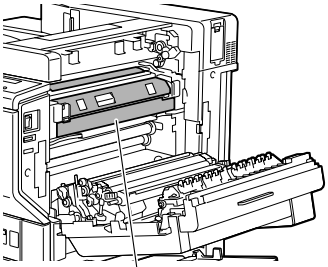
5 Close the right-side door.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

⚠ CAUTION

The area around the fusing unit is extremely hot.

➔Touching anything other than the indicated levers and dials may result in burns. If you get burnt, immediately cool the skin under cold water, and then seek professional medical attention.



Fusing unit

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

...

Reminder

If the paper is misfed as described below, contact your technical representative.

The paper is wrapped around the roller in the fusing unit.

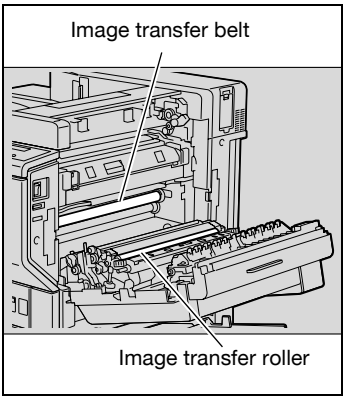
The paper is folded or shredded by the roller in the fusing unit.

The paper that was removed tore and partly remains in the fusing unit.

...

Reminder

Decreased print quality may result if the surface of the image transfer belt or the image transfer roller is touched. Be careful not to touch the surface of the image transfer belt or the image transfer roller.



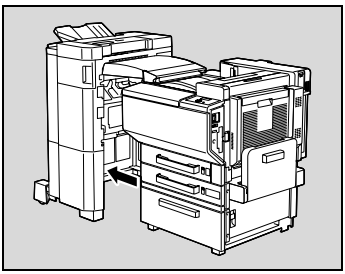
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to “Paper misfeed indications” on page 8-6.

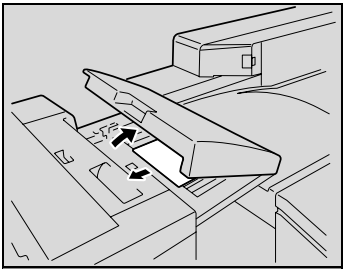
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in Finisher FS-507

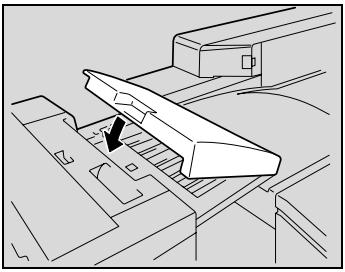
1 Slide the finisher away from the machine.



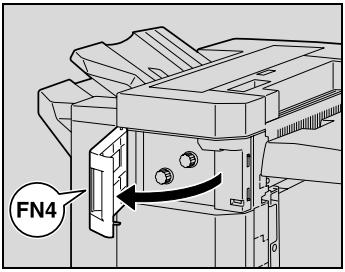
2 Open the horizontal transport unit cover, and then remove any misfed paper.



3 Close the horizontal transport unit cover.



4 Open front door FN4.

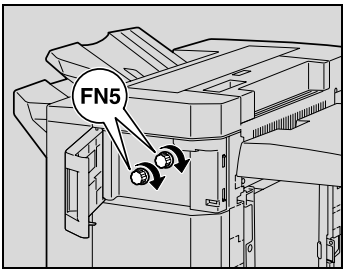


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 Turn misfeed-clearing dials FN5 clockwise at the same time.

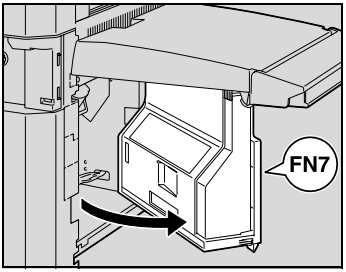
? What should be done if the paper can be seen from the exit tray?

➔ Turn misfeed-clearing dials FN5 counterclockwise at the same time to feed out any misfed paper.

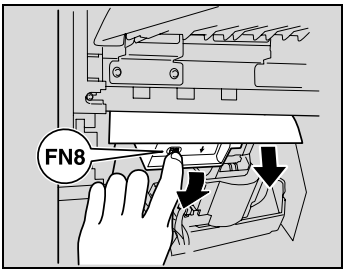


6 Close front door FN4.

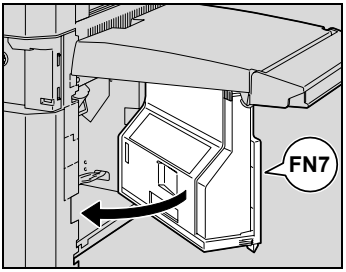
7 Open right-side door FN7.



8 While holding misfeed-clearing guide FN8 open, pull out any misfed paper.

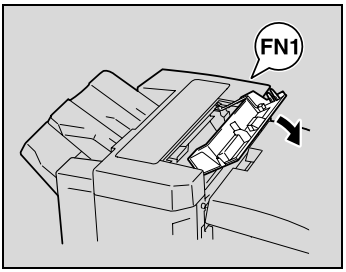


9 Close right-side door FN7.

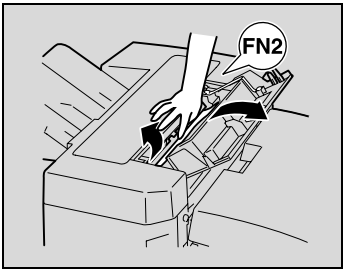


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

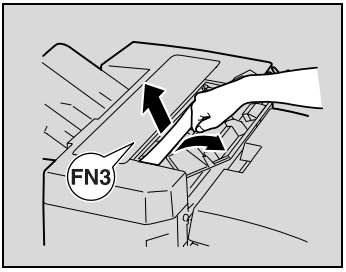
10 Open upper cover FN1.



11 Open misfeed-clearing guide FN2, and then pull out any misfed paper.



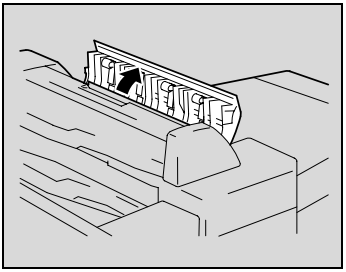
12 While holding misfeed-clearing guide FN3 open, pull out any misfed paper.



13 Close upper cover FN1.

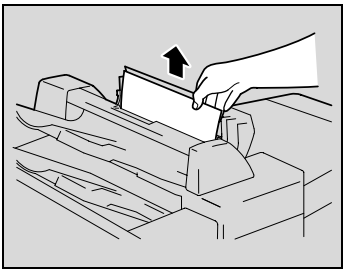
14 If job separator is installed:
Open the job separator cover.

– If job separator is not installed, skip to step 17.



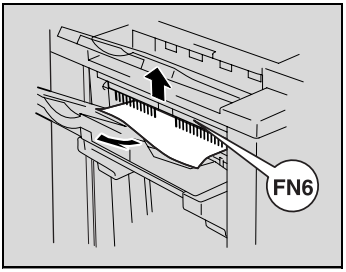
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

15 Remove any misfed paper.



16 Close the job separator cover.

17 While holding misfeed-clearing guide FN6 open, pull out any misfed paper.



18 Slide the finisher back against the machine.

⚠ CAUTION

Metallic parts on the inside of the upper cover are very hot.

➔Touching any part other than the paper may result in burns.

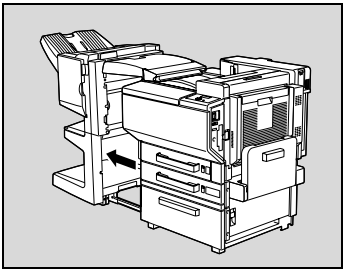
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to "Paper misfeed indications" on page 8-6.

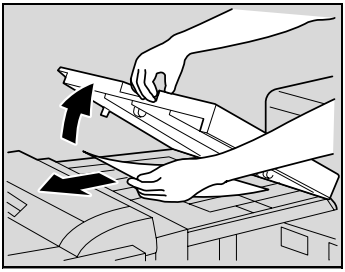
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear a paper misfeed in Finisher FS-603

1 Slide the finisher away from the machine.

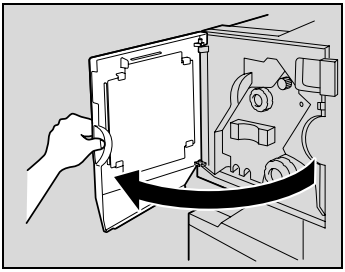


2 Open the horizontal transport unit cover, and then remove any misfed paper.



3 Close the horizontal transport unit cover.

4 Open the front door of the finisher.

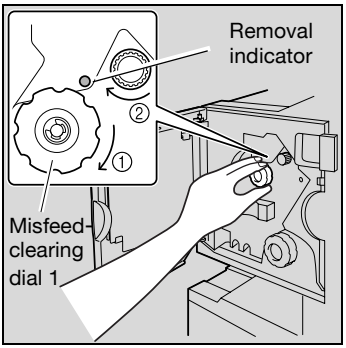


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

5 Turn misfeed-clearing dial 1 clockwise until the removal indicator is completely blue.

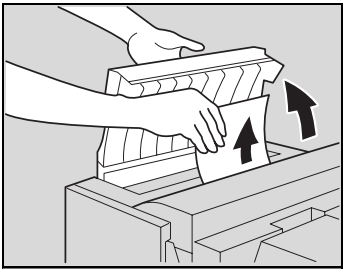
? What should be done if misfeed-clearing dial 1 is turned too far?

➔ Turn misfeed-clearing dial 1 counterclockwise to finely adjust it.

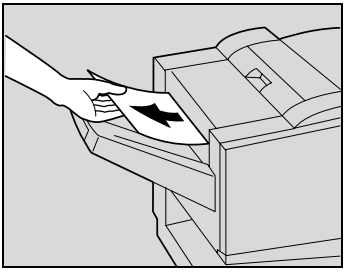


6 Open the upper door of the finisher, and then pull out any paper in the feed section.

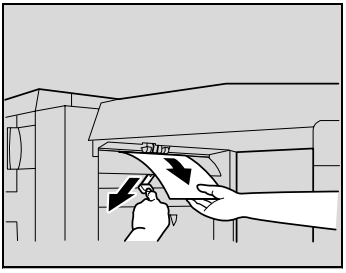
7 Close the upper door.



8 Remove all paper fed into the exit tray.

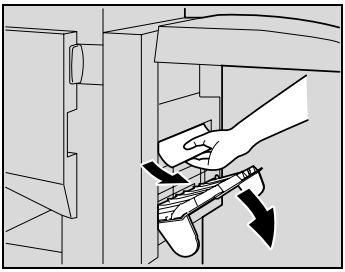


9 Open the misfeed-clearing guide for the finisher, and then remove any misfed paper.



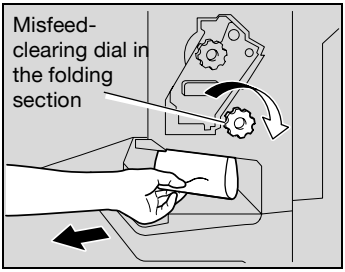
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10 Open the right-side door, and then pull out any misfed paper in the transport section.

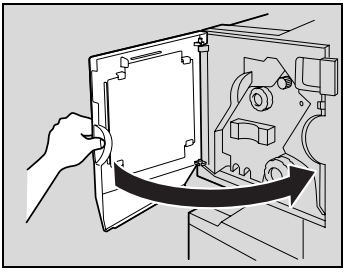


11 If the paper could not be removed in step 10, turn the misfeed-clearing dial in the folding section clockwise.

Feed the paper into exit tray 2, and then pull it out.



12 Close the front door of the finisher.



13 Slide the finisher back against the machine.

...

Reminder

If the message "Misfeed detected." appears, be sure to open the front door, turn the misfeed-clearing dial until the removal indicator is completely blue, and then remove the paper. If the paper is pulled out with too much force, the finisher may be damaged.

Do not pull paper remaining in the transfer unit out with too much force, otherwise the folding unit may be damaged.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Reminder

Be careful that your fingers are not pinched when the front door is closed.

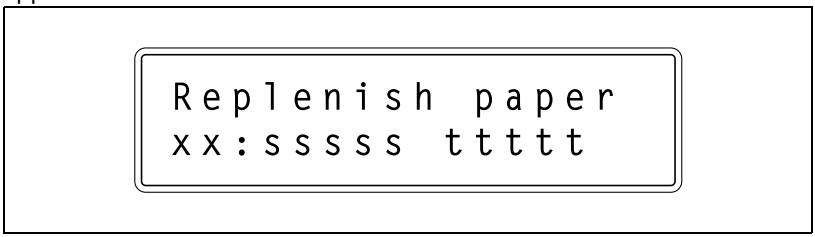
Detail

For details on the positions of paper misfeeds, refer to “Paper misfeed indications” on page 8-6.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8.3 When the message “Replenish paper” appears

If a tray has run out of paper while printing, the message “Replenish paper.” appears.



To replenish paper

➔ Check which paper tray is indicated, and then load it with paper.

xx: Indicates the paper tray
sssss: Indicates the size of the paper
ttttt: Indicates the code for the paper type
NRML (plain paper), 1SIDE (paper only for single-sided printing), OHP, TH1 to TH3 (thick paper 1 to 3), CLP (colored paper), LTHD (letterhead), ENV (envelopes), and SP (special paper).

Detail

For details on loading paper into the paper trays, refer to “Loading paper into Tray 1” on page 5-10, “Loading paper into Tray 2, 3, or 4” on page 5-14, “Loading paper into the LCT” on page 5-16, and “Loading paper into the bypass tray” on page 5-18.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8.4 Clearing a staple jam

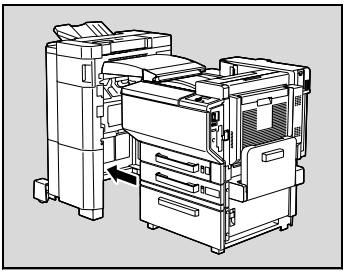
...

Reminder

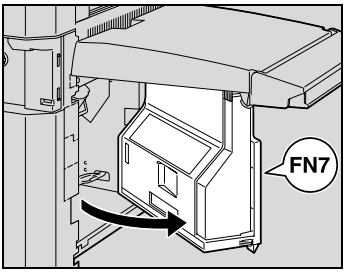
Be careful when clearing jammed staples since injuries may result.

To clear jammed staples in Finisher FS-507

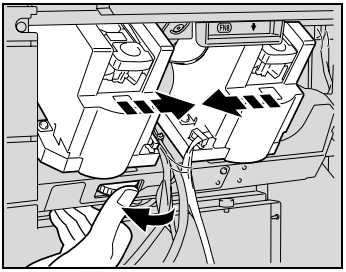
1 Slide the finisher away from the machine.



2 Open the right-side door FN7.

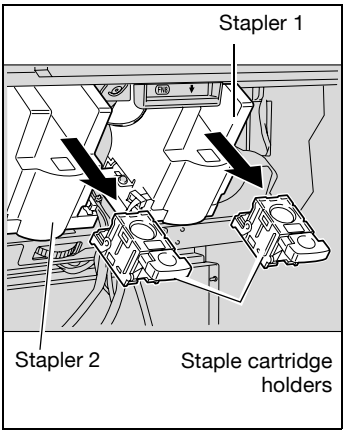


3 Turn the jammed-staple-clearing dial to the left in order to position stapler 1 and stapler 2 at the center.

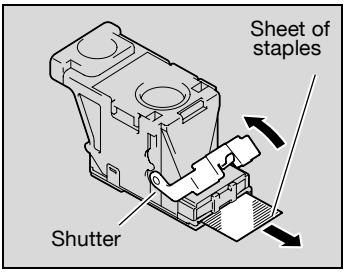


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

4 Pull the staple cartridge holder out toward you.

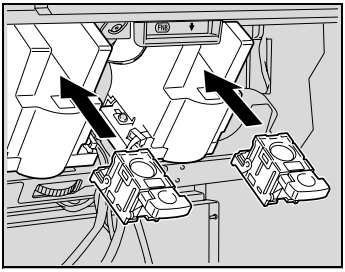


5 Swing open the shutter of the staple cartridge holder, and then pull out one sheet of staples.



6 Return the shutter of the staple cartridge holder to its original position.

7 Insert the staple cartridge holder until it locks into place.



8 Close the right-side door FN7.

9 Slide the finisher back against the machine.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

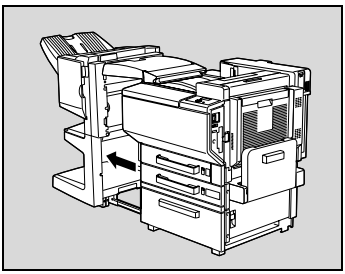
Reminder

If stapling still cannot be resumed, even after performing the above procedure, contact your technical representative.

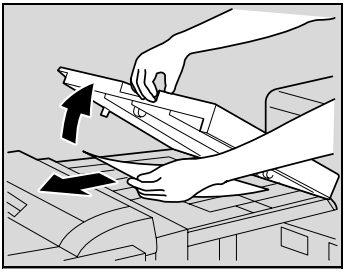
ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

To clear jammed staples in Finisher FS-603

1 Slide the finisher away from the machine.

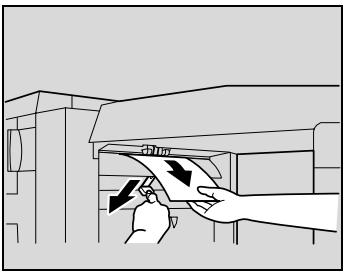


2 Open the horizontal transport unit cover, and then remove any misfed paper.

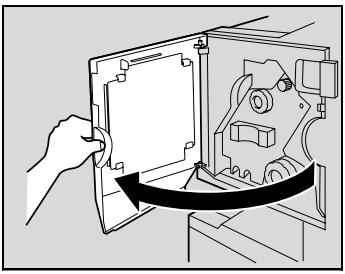


3 Close the horizontal transport unit cover.

4 Open the misfeed-clearing guide for the finisher, and then remove any misfed paper.



5 Open the front door of the finisher.

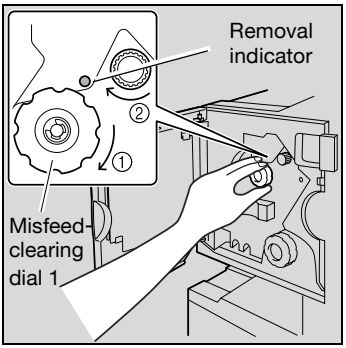


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

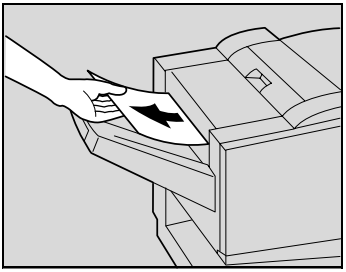
6 Turn misfeed-clearing dial 1 clockwise until the removal indicator is completely blue.

? What should be done if misfeed-clearing dial 1 is turned too far?

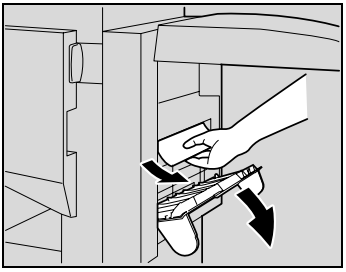
➔ Turn misfeed-clearing dial 1 counterclockwise to adjust it so the cartridge removal indicators are aligned.



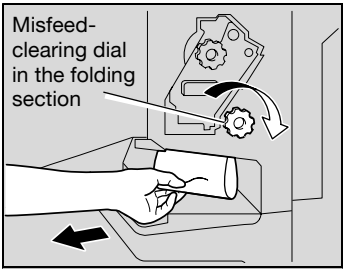
7 Remove all paper fed into the exit tray 1.



8 Open the Right-side door, and then pull out any misfed paper in the transport section.

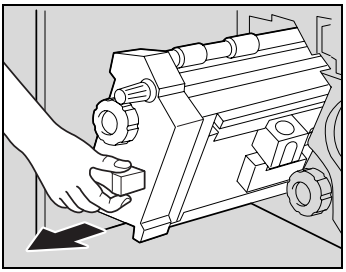


9 Clockwise turn the misfeed-clearing dial in the folding section. Feed out into the exit tray 2 the paper that could not be fed out in step 8, and then pull out the paper.

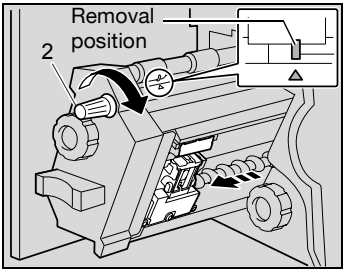


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10 Slowly pull out the stapler unit as far as possible.



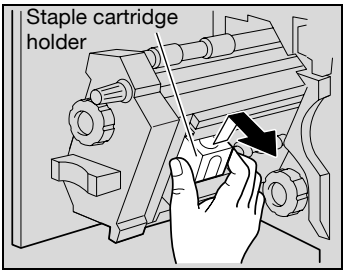
11 Turn misfeed-clearing dial 2 clockwise until the cartridge removal indicators are aligned.
The staple cartridge moves to a position from where it can be removed.



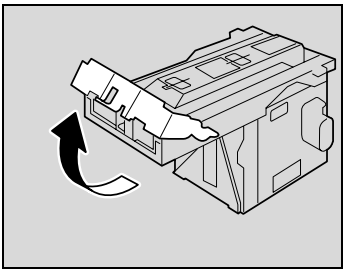
? What should be done if misfeed-clearing dial 2 is turned too far?

➔ Turn misfeed-clearing dial 2 counterclockwise to adjust it so the cartridge removal indicators are aligned.

12 Grasp both sides of the staple cartridge holder, lift it up, and then pull it out.



13 Swing open the shutter of the staple cartridge.

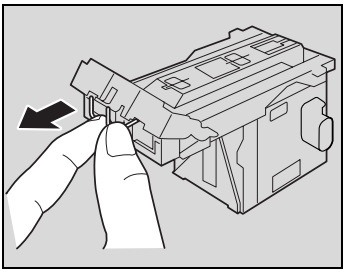


ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

14 Pull out toward you the two staples jammed at the end of the staple cartridge.

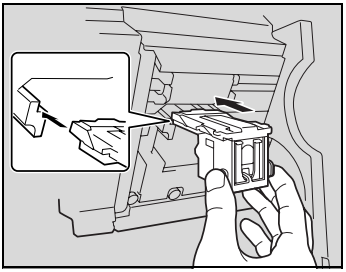
? What happens if two staples are not removed?

➔ Stapling cannot continue correctly.



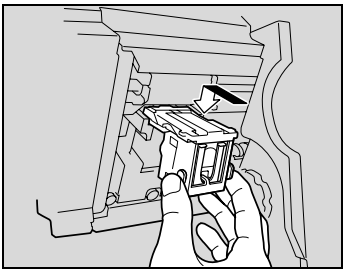
15 Return the shutter of the staple cartridge to its original position.

16 Insert the staple cartridge holder, making sure the tabs on the holder slide along the rails in the compartment.

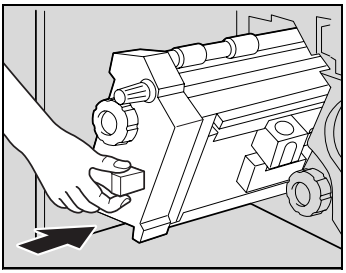


17 Insert the staple cartridge holder until it locks into place.

– Check that the staple cartridge holder is securely installed.



18 Carefully move the stapler unit back into its original position.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

19 Close the front door.

20 Slide the finisher back against the machine.

...

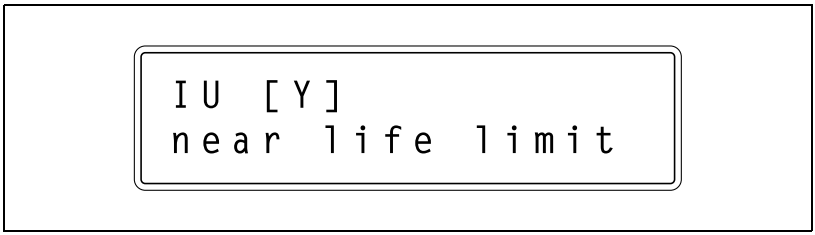
Reminder

Do not pull out paper with too much force, otherwise the folding unit may be damaged.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8.5 When “near life limit” appears

When it is almost time to replace supplies or a part within this machine, the message shown in the following illustration appears, warning about the replacement period.
(As an example, the message warning that the yellow imaging unit will soon need to be replaced is shown below.)



Note
When the message appears, replace the specified supplies or part according to your maintenance agreement.

Detail
After the message “xxxx near life limit” appears, the message “Replace xxx” or “Please replace xxxx.” appears and the machine stops operating.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8.6 Simple troubleshooting

Main unit

Symptom	Possible Cause	Remedy
The machine does not start up when the main power switch is turned on.	Is no power supplied from the electrical outlet?	Correctly insert the power supply plug into the electrical outlet.
Correctly insert the power supply plug into the electrical outlet.	Is the right-side door of the machine open?	Securely close the right-side door of the machine.
	Is there no paper that matches the document?	Load paper of the appropriate size into the paper tray.
The printed output is too light.	Was the print density changed from the printer driver?	Check the printer driver setting.
	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper. (See p. 5-10, p. 5-14, p. 5-16 and p. 5-18.)
The printed output is too dark.	Was the print density changed from the printer driver?	Check the printer driver setting.
The printed output is blurry.	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper. (See p. 5-10, p. 5-14, p. 5-16 and p. 5-18.)
There are dark specks or spots throughout the printed output. There are streaks in the printed output.	Is the electrostatic charger dirty?	Use the charger-cleaning tool to clean the electrostatic charger. (See p. 7-4.)
The image is not aligned properly on the paper.	Are the lateral guides incorrectly positioned against the edges of the paper?	Slide the lateral guides against the edges of the paper.
	Was curled paper loaded into the paper tray?	Flatten the paper before loading it.
The printed page is curled.	Was paper that curls easily (as with recycled paper) used?	Remove the paper from the paper tray, turn it over, and then load it again.
		Replace the paper with paper that is not damp.
Even though the paper misfeed was cleared, prints cannot be produced.	Are there paper misfeeds at other locations?	Check the control panel for other paper misfeed indications, and then remove any misfed paper at all other locations. (See “Paper misfeed indications” on page 8-6.)

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Symptom	Possible Cause	Remedy
Printing is not possible even though the password is entered on a machine with user authentication/account track set.	Did the message “Your account has reached its maximum color-print (black-print) allowance.” appear?	Contact your administrator.

Finisher

Symptom	Possible Cause	Remedy
The finisher cannot be used.	Is no power supplied to the connector?	Check that the cord is correctly inserted into the connector.
The pages cannot be stapled.	Have the staples run out?	Replace the staple cartridge. (See p. 6-8.)
The pages that were fed out were not uniformly loaded and the punched holes or staples are incorrectly positioned.	Is the paper curled?	Remove the paper from the paper tray, turn it over, and then load it again.
	Is there a gap between the lateral guides in the paper tray and the side of the paper?	Slide the lateral guides in the paper tray against the side of the paper so that there is no gap.
Even though a Punch setting was selected, holes are not punched. (when punch kit is installed on FS-603 or FS-507)	Did the message “Punch Scrap Full.” appear?	Empty the hole-punch waste container.

If any message other than those listed above appears, perform the operation described in the message.

If the problem is not corrected after the described operation is performed, contact your technical representative.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printer driver

Symptom	Probable Cause	Action
The message “No printers are connected.” or “Print error” appears.	The printer driver selected for printing is not compatible with the printer controller.	Check the printer name selected.
	The network cable, parallel cable, or USB cable is disconnected.	Check that the cable is connected properly.
	Available memory space is not sufficient.	Perform a test print to check whether printing is possible.
	An error has occurred in this machine.	Check this machine’s control panel.
A postscript error appears.	Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Perform a test print to check whether printing is possible.
	There is an error in the application software settings.	Refer to the user’s manual of the application software to check the settings.
	The file printing settings are incorrect.	Change the settings and try to print again.
The machine does not start printing although the print job was completed on the computer.	The printer driver selected for printing is not compatible with the printer controller.	Check the printer name selected.
	The network cable, parallel cable, or US cable is disconnected.	Check that the cable is connected properly.
	An error has occurred in this machine.	Check this machine’s control panel.
	A print job is queued in this machine, delaying printing.	Check the job order on the Active Jobs list of the machine’s control panel.
	“Save in User Box” was selected for the print job.	Check if the print job is stored on the Box screen of this machine’s control panel.
	“Secure Print” was selected for the print job.	Check if the print job is held on the Secure Print User Box screen of this machine’s control panel.
	If the account track settings have been applied, an unregistered account name (or password) may have been entered.	Enter the correct account name (or password).
	Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Perform a test print to check whether printing is possible.
	The connection of this machine to the network is not yet established (while connecting to a network).	Consult with the network administrator.
A printer driver setting cannot be selected.	Some functions cannot be combined.	Do not try to select settings that are not available.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Symptom	Probable Cause	Action
The “Conflicts” message with “Unable to Select” or “Function Canceled” appears.	An incorrect combination of functions has been specified.	Check the settings and specify the functions correctly.
Printing is not performed as specified.	Incorrect settings are specified.	Check each setting in the printer driver.
	A combination of functions, although possible in the printer driver, is not possible with this machine.	
	The paper size, orientation, and other settings specified in the application have priority over those specified in the printer driver.	Enter the correct settings in the application.
The watermark cannot be printed.	The watermark is not correctly set.	Check the watermark settings.
	The watermark density is set to a level that is too low.	Check the density settings.
	Watermarks cannot be printed in graphics applications.	No watermark can be printed in this case.
The staple function cannot be specified.	Stapling is not possible if “Paper Type” is set to “Thick” or “Transparency”.	Check each setting in the printer driver.
	The staple function requires optional Finisher FS-507 or FS-603.	Install the required optional finisher and enable it using the printer driver.
Stapling cannot be performed.	Stapling is not possible if the document contains pages of different sizes.	Check the document.
The stapling position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the stapling position in the printer driver setup dialog box.
The hole punch function cannot be specified.	Hole punching cannot be specified if “Booklet” is selected or paper not compatible with the finisher is used.	Check each setting in the printer driver.
	If optional Finisher FS-603 is installed, the punch kit is required.	Install the required optional finisher and enable it using the printer driver.
The pages are not punched.	Printed pages may be fed out without being punched if the paper is loaded into the paper source with an incorrect orientation.	Check the orientation setting.
The hole punch position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the punch position on the Layout tab of the printer driver setup dialog box.
The form is not printed properly.	Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Simplify the form to reduce the data size.
The image is not printed properly.	Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Simplify the image to reduce the data size.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Symptom	Probable Cause	Action
Paper is not fed from the specified paper source.	Paper will not be fed from the specified paper source if that paper source is loaded with paper of a different size or orientation.	Load the paper source with paper of the appropriate size and orientation.
The access number cannot be specified.	To specify access numbers, a hard disk must be added in the Option tab of the printer driver.	Add a hard disk in the Option tab of the printer driver.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

8.7 Main messages and their remedies

Main messages

Message	Cause	Remedy
Set paper. Check Size Check Type	Paper of a suitable size is not loaded in a paper tray.	Either select a different size or feed paper of a suitable size from the bypass tray.
Remove paper.	Since the maximum amount of papers for the indicated finisher exit tray has been exceeded, the machine is unable to make prints.	Remove all papers from the indicated tray.
Account Name	Account track settings have been specified. Prints cannot be made unless an account name and its correct password are entered.	Type in your account name and password. (See “Specifying Account Track settings” on page 3-21, page 3-52, and “Security” on page 3-101.)
Exceeds print limit.	The limit on the number of prints that can be made has been reached.	Contact your administrator.
Door open at xxxxxx	Since a machine door or cover is open or an option is not installed correctly, the machine is unable to make prints.	Make sure that all doors and covers are closed and that all options are installed correctly.
Please set IU.	The fusing unit is not installed correctly.	Reinstall the supplies or parts, or contact your technical representative.
Toner Cartridge not set.	The indicated toner cartridge is not installed correctly.	
Waste Toner Box not set.	The waste-toner box is not installed correctly.	
Replenish paper.*1	The indicated tray has run out of paper.	Load paper into the indicated tray. (See “Loading paper into Tray 1” on page 5-10, “Loading paper into Tray 2, 3, or 4” on page 5-14, “Loading paper into the LCT” on page 5-16, and “Loading paper into the bypass tray” on page 5-18.)
Toner near empty.	The toner for the indicated color is about to run out.	Prepare to replace the toner cartridge according to your maintenance agreement.
Toner Empty	Since the toner for the indicated color has run out, the machine is unable to make prints.	Replace the toner cartridge according to your maintenance agreement.
Add Staple.	The staples have run out.	Replace the staple cartridge. See “Replacing the staples” on page 6-8.
Paper Misfeed at xxxx	Since a paper misfeed occurred, the machine is unable to make prints.	Clear the paper misfeed. (See “When the message “Paper Misfeed at” appears” on page 8-5.)

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Message	Cause	Remedy
Trouble C-xxxx Call Service	The machine malfunctioned and is unable to make prints.	Inform your technical representative of the code displayed on the control panel.

If any message other than those listed above appears, perform the operation described in the message.

*1 For a message concerning the paper, the paper tray, paper size and paper type are indicated as codes in the second line.

Example: T1: A4-R NRML
(For A4-R-sized plain paper in Tray 1)

The codes represent the following.

- Trays
  T1 to T4 (Tray 1 to Tray 4), BP (bypass tray), LC (LCT)
- Paper size
  AO, AO-R, BO, BOx-R (“O” is replaced with a number that indicates the paper size.)
  LD (11 × 17), LG (Legal), LT (Letter), IV (Invoice), EX (7 1/4 × 10 1/2)
  8K, 16K, 16K-R
  OOWR (wide paper for each size), FR (custom size)
- Paper type
  NRML (plain paper), 1SIDE (paper only for single-sided printing), OHP, TH1 to TH3 (thick paper 1 to 3)
  CLP (colored paper), LTHD (letterhead), ENV (envelopes), and SP (special paper)

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

9 Additional settings

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

9 Additional settings

9.1 Using PageScope Web Connection

PageScope Web Connection is a device management utility supported by the HTTP server integrated into the printer.

Using a Web browser on a computer connected to the network, machine settings can be specified from PageScope Web Connection.

System requirements

Network	Ethernet (TCP/IP)
Computer applications	Compatible Web browsers: Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6 or later recommended (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Microsoft XML parser MSXML3.X must be installed when Internet Explorer 5.X is being used. Netscape Navigator Ver. 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) J2RE (Java 2 Runtime Environment) required

Accessing PageScope Web Connection

1 Start up the Web browser.

2 In the “Address” bar, type the IP address of this machine, and then press the [Enter] key.

- http://***<IP_address_for_this_machine>***/
- (Example) If the IP address for this machine is 192.168.0.20:
- http://192.168.1.20/

Note

If SSL/TLS is enabled, type in the URL as:

*https://**<IP_address_of_this_machine>**/*

For details on specifying the IP address of this machine, refer to “Setting the IP address for this machine” on page 2-30.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

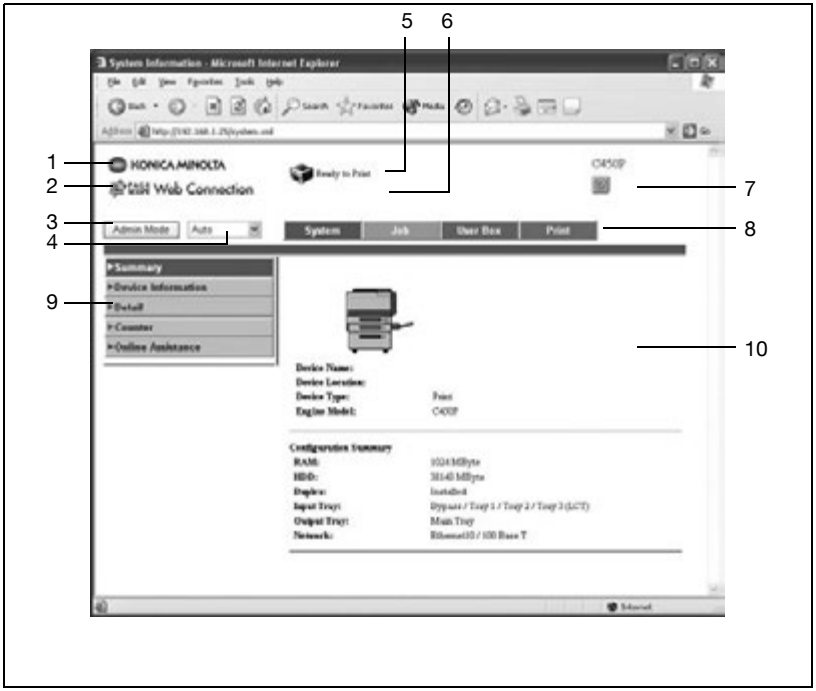
Structure of pages

The page that appears immediately after PageScope Web Connection is accessed is called the User mode page. All users can view this page.

Note

By clicking the [Admin Mode] button, the Administrator mode page can be displayed. For details, refer to "Logging on to Administrator mode" on page 9-6.

The pages of PageScope Web Connection are constructed as shown below.



пятый партнер
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Common items

No.	Item Name	Description
1	Konica Minolta logo	Click the logo to go to the Konica Minolta Web site at the following URL. http://konicaminolta.com
2	PageScope Web Connection logo	Click the PageScope Web Connection logo to display the version information.
3	Administrator mode log-on button	Click to log on to Administrator mode.
4	Display language	Select the desired display language from the drop-down list.
5	Status display	Icons are used to display the status of the machine.
6	Message display	If an error occurred in the machine, the status of the malfunction/error and other error information are displayed.
7	Help	Click to display the home page of the online manual.
8	Tabs	Click to select the desired category of settings.
9	Menus	Information and settings for the selected tab are listed. The menu that appears differs depending on the tab that is selected.
10	Information and settings	Details of the item selected from the menu are displayed.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Administrator mode

You can switch between User mode and Administrator mode. However, you must be logged on to Administrator mode in order to specify system or network settings.

Logging on to Administrator mode

1 Click the [Admin Mode] button.

2 In the box, type in the administrator password for the machine, and then click the [Login] button.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

– The Administrator mode page appears.

– To return to User mode, click the [Logout] button.

Reminder

When logged on to Administrator mode, the control panel of this machine is locked and cannot be used.

Depending on the status of the machine, you may not be able to log on to Administrator mode.

When logged on to Administrator mode, if no operation is performed for the set length of time, a timeout occurs and you will automatically be logged off from Administrator mode. For details on specifying the timeout period, refer to “Administrator mode” on page 9-13.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Web browser cache

The most recent information may not appear in the PageScope Web Connection pages because older versions of pages are saved in the cache for the Web browser. In addition, problems may occur when the cache is used.

When using PageScope Web Connection, disable the cache for the Web browser.

Reminder

The menus and commands may vary depending on the Web browser version. For details, refer to the Help for the Web browser.

If the Web browser is used with the cache enabled and Administrator mode was timed out, the timeout page may appear even when PageScope Web Connection is accessed again. In addition, since the machine's control panel remains locked, the machine must be restarted. In order to avoid this problem, disable the cache.

On Internet Explorer

1 On the “Tools” menu, click “Internet Options”.

2 On the General tab, click the [Settings] button under “Temporary Internet files”.

3 Select “Every visit to the page”, and then click the [OK] button.

On Netscape

1 On the “Edit” menu, click “Preferences”.

2 In the “Category” box, click “Advanced”, then “Cache”.

3 Under “Compare the page in the cache to the page on the network”, select “Every time I view the page”.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

User mode

The User mode provides functions for checking and operating the machine on a user level. You can select from five tabs (System, Job, User Box, and Print).

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

System tab

On the System tab, information and settings concerning the system configuration of this machine are displayed.

The System tab is the first page that appears when you access “http://<IP_address_for_this_machine>/” on the Web browser.

Menus		Description
Summary		Graphics and text are used to show the configuration of options installed on this machine.
Device Information		The display language of the control panel screens and the name of the administrator are displayed.
Detail	Input Tray	The status of each paper tray is displayed.
	Output Tray	The status of each of installed output tray is displayed.
	HDD	The capacity and size used for the machine’s hard disk drive are displayed.
	Interface Information	The usability of each protocol and network information are displayed.
	Consumables	Information about consumables for this machine is displayed.
Counter		The counters managed by the machine are displayed.
Online Assistance		Support information for the machine is displayed.

Reminder

If the consumables are not installed, their status may not be correctly indicated on the page displayed by clicking “Consumables” in the menu under “Detail”.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Job tab

From the Job tab, jobs managed by the machine can be checked.

Menus		Description
Active Job List	Print	The list of print jobs being performed and queued to be performed and their details are displayed.
	HDD/Memory	The list of box jobs being performed and queued to be performed and their details are displayed.
Done Job List	Print	The list of completed print jobs and their details are displayed.
	HDD/Memory	The list of completed box jobs and their details are displayed.

Reminder

The number assigned to the job when it was queued in the machine appears as the job number.

To display detailed information, click the [Detail] button .

User Box tab

From the User Box tab, you can create boxes and check and download files from boxes.

Menus		Description
User Box List	User Box Login	Type in the box number and password for the box to be opened.
	User Box List	The list of boxes is displayed. Click the [Create User Box] button to create a new box.
User Box Admin.		Type in the box administrator password to log on in the administrator screen. Appears only when a box administrator has been specified.

Reminder

Some operations cannot be performed while a box is being accessed from a different copy of PageScope Web Connection, or from the control panel.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Print tab

From the Print tab, you can check the default printer settings and print the various reports.

Menus		Description
Default Settings	General Settings	The default printer settings are displayed.
	PCL Settings	The PCL settings are displayed.
	PS Settings	The PostScript settings are displayed.
Report Types	PostScript Font List	The list of fonts that can be used with PostScript are printed.
	PCL Font List	The list of fonts that can be used with PCL are printed.
	Demo Page	The demo page is printed.
	Configuration Page	The various configuration information pages for this machine are printed.

...

Reminder

It may not be possible to print reports while the machine is processing a job.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Administrator mode

In Administrator mode, you can specify system settings for this machine. You can select from five tabs (System, User Box, Print, and Network).

For details on logging on to Administrator mode, refer to “Logging on to Administrator mode” on page 9-6.

Basic operation

1 Click a tab, and then select an item from the menu on the left side.

2 Specify settings for the displayed options. Either type in a setting directly or select one from the drop-down list.

3 Click the [Apply] button to apply the settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

System tab

On the System tab, information and settings concerning the system configuration of this machine are displayed.

Menus		Description
Date/Time	Manual Setting	Type in the date and time to specify them.
	NTP Setting	Specify whether the date and time can be set through passive acquisition from the NTP server.
Administrator Password		Change the administrator password.
Device Information		Specify the device name and location and the name of the administrator.
Online Assistance		Specify the support information for this machine. To display this information, click the System tab in User mode, and then click “Online Assistance”.
Import/Export		Information from this machine can be saved as a file (exported) or information can be written to this machine (imported).
Maintenance	Network Setting Clear	The machine’s network settings can be reset to those specified when the machine was shipped from the factory.
	Reset	Resets the printer controller.
	Format All Destination	Clears all registered destinations.
E-Mail Alert		Specify that an e-mail is sent to the registrant when an error occurs in this machine.
Network TWAIN		This item is not available with this machine.

...

Reminder

Only text files can be read when importing and exporting.

If the settings are cleared by selecting “Network Setting Clear”, you will not be able to connect to this machine until the settings are specified again.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

User Box tab

On the User Box tab, information and settings for the boxes are displayed.

Menus	Description
User Box Delete	Deletes the specified box.
Reset User Box Password	Change the password of the specified box.
User Box Admin.	Select whether or not the boxes are managed by an administrator.

Reminder

Some operations cannot be performed while a box is being accessed from a different copy of PageScope Web Connection, or from the control panel.

Print tab

From the Print tab, the default print setting can be changed.

Menus		Description
Interface		Specify the time period for a transmission timeout for each interface and the mode for the parallel interface.
Default Settings	General Settings	Change the default print settings, such as the paper tray and paper size.
	PCL Settings	Change the PCL settings.
	PS Settings	Change the PostScript settings.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Network tab

From the Network tab, settings concerning the network connection can be changed.

Menus		Description
TCP/IP	TCP/IP	Change the TCP/IP settings, such as the IP address for the connection.
	IP Address Filtering	Specify the settings for IP address filtering. Limitations can be set on access by specifying the IP address of the host.
NetWare	NetWare	Change the NetWare settings.
	NetWare Status	The NetWare file server and print queue name are displayed to show the NetWare connection status.
IPP		Change the settings for IPP printing.
FTP	Client	Specify the client settings, such as the FTP proxy server.
	Server	Select whether or not the FTP server is enabled.
SNMP		Select whether or not SNMP is enabled.
SMB	Scan	This item is not available with this machine.
	Print	Change the settings for SMB printing.
AppleTalk		Change the AppleTalk settings.
LDAP		Change the LDAP settings.
E-Mail	E-mail Receive	Specify e-mail reception settings.
	E-mail Send	Specify e-mail transmission settings.
SSL/TLS		Specify the settings for SSL/TLS. If SSL/TLS is enabled, transmissions between this machine and the client computer are encoded.
Authentication	Auto Logout	Specify the settings for automatically logging out from Administrator mode and User mode. If no operation is performed within the length of time set here, the user is automatically logged out from the mode.
IS OpenAPI		Specify the settings for the extended application interface.

Reminder

In order to apply the changes to the settings on the Network tab, restart the machine (turn it off, then on again).

When turning the machine off, then on again, wait at least 10 seconds to turn the machine on after turning it off. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

9.2 Managing print jobs

Specifying job operations

Job operations can be specified for this machine by specifying settings in the printer driver.

Available job operations

Job operation	Description
Secure Print	Type in an ID and password from the machine's control panel in order to print the document. (Up to 100 documents can be saved in this way.)
Save in User Box	The print document is saved in a box on the machine.
Save in User Box and Print	The document is printed at the same time that it is saved in a box.
Proof and Print	After printing a single copy of the document, the machine temporarily stops. Select this function in order to prevent misprints from occurring in large-volume print jobs.

...

Reminder

The "Secure Print" and "Save in User Box" functions can be selected only if the optional hard disk drive is installed.

...

Reminder

Settings for these functions can be specified from the following printer drivers.

Konica Minolta PCL Printer Driver for Windows

Konica Minolta PostScript Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003

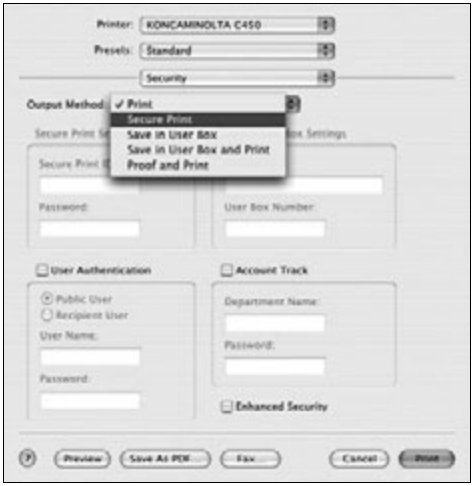
Konica Minolta PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setting procedure

With Windows, select a function from the “Output Method” drop-down list on the Setup tab.

With a Macintosh, select a function from the “Output Method” drop-down list, which is displayed after “Security” is selected.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Storing jobs

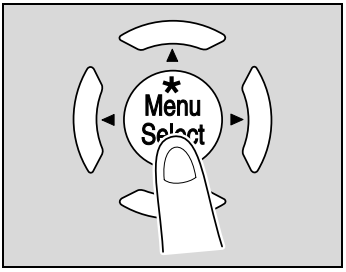
Depending on the function selected in the “Output Method” drop-down list of the printer driver, the print document may be stored on this machine as a print job.

In order to print a stored job, the job must be recalled using the “Job Operation” menu from the machine’s control panel.

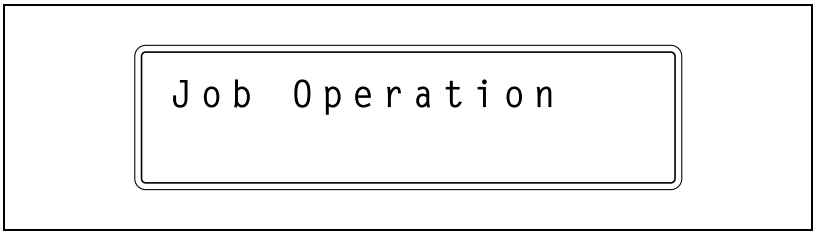
Recalling a job

1 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The settings menu appears.



2 “Job Operation” appears.



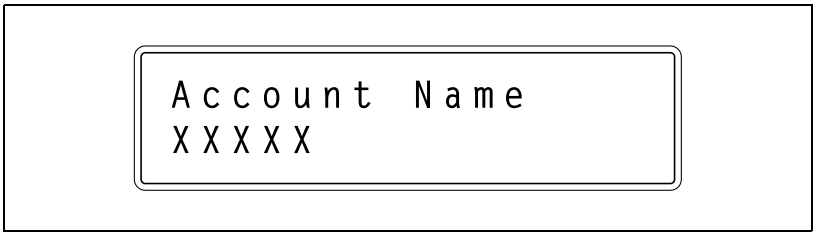
3 Press the [▶] key.

- If account track settings have been specified on the machine, the screen for entering the account name appears. Continue with step 4 to enter the account name and password.
- If account track settings have not been specified, the “Job Operation” menu appears. Skip to step 6 to select the job.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

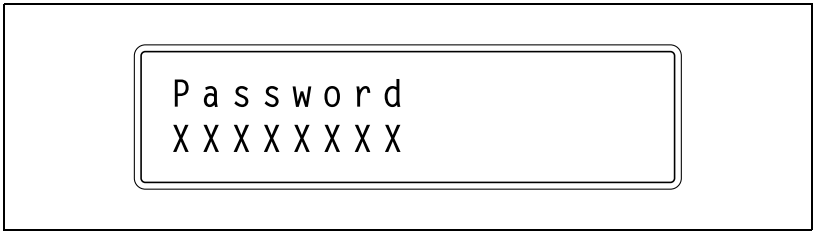
4 Enter the account name, and then press the [Menu/Select] key.

Enter the account name by pressing the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired character appears and pressing the [▶] key so that the next character can be entered.
When the [Menu/Select] key is pressed, the screen for entering the password appears.



5 Enter the password, and then press the [Menu/Select] key.

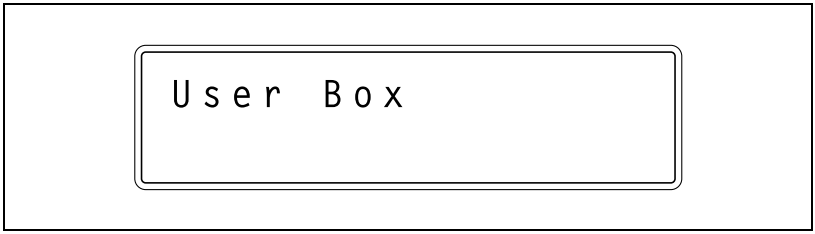
Enter the password by pressing the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired character appears and pressing the [▶] key so that the next character can be entered.
When the [Menu/Select] key is pressed, the “Job Operation” menu appears.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

6 Press the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired job appears.

- Secure Print: Select to print a document stored using the “Secure Print” function.
- User Box: Select to print a document stored using the “Save in User Box” or “Save in User Box and Print” function.
- Held Jobs: Select to print a document stored using the “Proof and Print” function or any other stored job.



7 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

- If “Secure Print” or “User Box” was selected, the screen for entering the ID and box number appears. Continue with step 8 to enter the appropriate information.
- If “Held Jobs” was selected, a screen for selecting the print range appears. Skip to step 10 to select the print range.

8 Enter the ID if “Secure Print” was selected or the box number if “User Box” was selected, and then press the [Menu/Select] key.

Enter the data by pressing the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired character appears and pressing the [▶] key so that the next character can be entered.
When the [Menu/Select] key is pressed, the screen for entering the password appears.

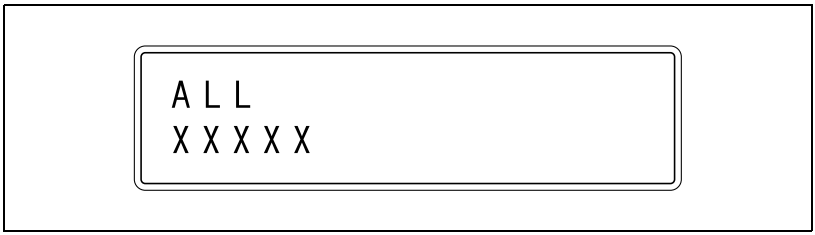
9 Enter the password, and then press the [Menu/Select] key.

Enter the password by pressing the [▲] and [▼] keys until the desired character appears and pressing the [▶] key so that the next character can be entered.
When the [Menu/Select] key is pressed, the screen for selecting the print range appears.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

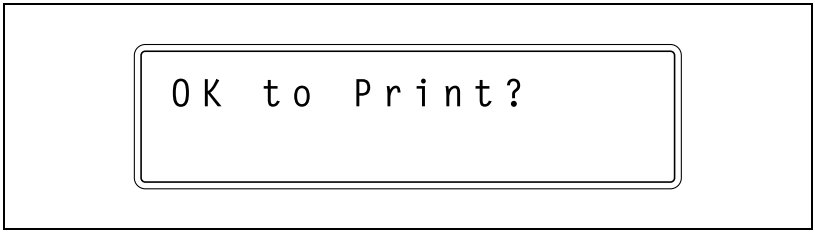
10 To print, press the [Menu/Select] key.
The print confirmation screen appears.

- To specify the number of copies to be printed, press the [▶] key, and then specify the desired number of copies in the screen that appears.
- To delete the job, press the [Cancel] key.



11 Press the [Menu/Select] key.

The document is printed.



ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Printing when account track settings have been specified

If account track settings have been specified, the account code (access code) must be entered in order to print.

Reminder

If the entered access code is not registered with the account track settings of the machine or if account track settings have not been specified, an error will occur. Use the "Job Operation" menu from the machine's control panel to check the job.

These settings can be specified from the following printer drivers.

Konica Minolta PCL Printer Driver for Windows

Konica Minolta PostScript Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003

Konica Minolta PPD Printer Driver for Mac OS X

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setting procedure (for Windows)

1 Click the [Properties] or [Preferences] button in the Print dialog box to display the Printing Preferences dialog box.

2 Click the Setup tab.

3 Click the [User Authentication/Account Track] button.

4 Select the “Account Track” check box, and then type in the department name and password.

5 After specifying the settings, click the [OK] button to print the document.

– If the entered department name and password are accepted by the machine, the job is printed and added to the count for the specified account.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Setting procedure (for Mac OS X)

1 On the “File” menu, click “Print”.

2 Select “Security”.

3 Select the “Account Track” check box, and then type in the department name and password.

4 Click the [Print] button to print the document.

– If the entered department name and password are accepted by the machine, the job is printed and added to the count for the specified account.

Job operations in PageScope Web Connection

From PageScope Web Connection, the status of jobs being performed by this machine can be checked.

For details, refer to the following pages.

“User mode” on page 9-9

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10 Appendix

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10 Appendix

10.1 Specifications

bizhub C450P

Specifications	
Type	Desktop printer
Photoconductor	OPC
Developing system	HMT developing method (HMT-OR)
Fusing system	Belt-fixing
Paper	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2), overhead projector transparencies*, letterheads, colored paper, envelopes*, label sheets* * Can only be fed through the Tray 1 or the bypass tray
Print sizes	Tray 1: A3 ◪ to B6 ◪, A6 ◪, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪), 8K ◪, 16K ◪/▯, 11 × 17 ◪ to 5-1/2 × 8-1/2 ◪/▯, 8 × 13 ◪ *1 Width: 90 to 311.1 mm; Length: 139.7 to 457.2 mm Tray 2: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯, 11 × 17 ◪ to 8-1/2 × 11 ◪/▯ Bypass tray: A3 ◪ to B6 ◪, A6 ◪, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪), 8K ◪, 16K ◪/▯, 11 × 17 ◪ to 5-1/2 × 8-1/2 ◪/▯, 8 × 13 ◪ *1 Width: 90 to 311.1 mm; Length: 139.7 to 457.2 mm
Paper tray capacity	Tray 1: Plain paper: 250 sheets Thick paper 1/2/3, overhead projector transparencies, label sheets: 20 sheets or less Envelopes: 10 sheets or less Tray 2: Plain paper: 500 sheets; Thick paper 1/2/3: 150 sheets or less Bypass tray: Plain paper: 150 sheets Thick paper 1/2/3, overhead projector transparencies, label sheets: 20 sheets or less Envelopes: 10 sheet or less
Print exit tray capacity	Plain paper: 250 sheets; Thick paper: 20 sheets; Overhead projector transparencies: 1 sheet
Warm-up time	Less than 99 seconds (at room temperature (23 degrees Celsius))
Image loss	Leading edge: 4.2 mm; Trailing edge: 3 mm; Rear edge: 3 mm; Front edge: 3 mm
CPU	PPC750 FX 600 MHz

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifications		
ROM		64 MB
RAM		512 MB
Hard Disk		40 GB
Interface		Standard: Ethernet (10Base-T or 100Base-TX) Optional: USB 1.1, USB 2.0, or IEEE 1284
Frame Type		Ethernet 802.2 Ethernet 802.3 Ethernet II Ethernet SNAP
Supported Protocols		TCP/IP IPX/SPX NetBEUI AppleTalk (EtherTalk)
Print Speed		35 pages/minute (color, A4 ▯ paper, and simplex) 45 pages/minute (monochrome, A4 ▯ paper, and simplex)
First Print Time		8.5 seconds or less (color and A4 paper) 5.5 seconds or less (monochrome and A4 paper)
Printer Language		PCL5e/c Emulation PCL6 (XL 2.1) Emulation PostScript 3 Emulation (3011)
Operating Environment Conditions		Temperature 10 to 30°C Humidity 15—85% RH
Resolution	Data Processing	600 × 600 dpi (printing)
	Printing	600 × 1800 dpi (equivalent)
Supported Paper Sizes		Maximum Standard Size
Printer Fonts		PCL Latin 80 Fonts Postscript 3 Emulation Latin 136 Fonts
Compatible Computers		IBM PC or compatible
Supported Operating Systems	Server	Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, or Windows Server 2003
	Client	Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows NT 4.0 (SP6a) MacOS 9.2 or later or MacOS X 10.2 or 10.3
Printer Driver		PCL6: • Windows 98 Second Edition or Windows Me Printer Driver • Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows 2003 Printer Driver • Windows NT 4.0 (SP6) Printer Driver PS3: • Windows 98 Second Edition or Windows Me PPD File • Windows NT 4.0 (SP6) • Windows 2000 • Windows XP • Windows Server 2003 Printer Driver • MacOS 9.2 PPD File • MacOS X 10.2 or MacOS X 10.3 Printer Driver

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifications	
Utility	PageScope Web Connection Web Browsers: Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 or later recommended (JavaScript enabled, Cookies enabled) Microsoft XML Parser MSXML3.X must be installed when using Internet Explorer 5.X. Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript enabled, Cookies enabled) J2RE (Java 2 Runtime Environment) required
Power requirements	110 V, 15 A, 60 Hz 120-127 V, 12 A, 60 Hz 220-240 V, 8 A, 50 Hz
Power consumption	Less than 1,500 W
Dimensions	706 mm (W) × 765 mm (D) × 586 mm (H)
Space requirements*2	1,014 mm (W) × 765 mm (D)
Weight	Approx. 89 kg

*1 There are five Foolscap sizes: 220 mm × 330 mm, 8-1/2 × 13 ◪, 8-1/4 × 13 ◪, 8-1/8 × 13-1/4 ◪ and 8 × 13 ◪. Any one of these sizes can be selected. For details, contact the technical representative.

*2 The indicated spaced requirements represent the space required to fully extend the bypass tray.

In order to incorporate improvements, these product specifications are subject to change without notice.

Automatic duplex unit

Specifications	
Paper types	Plain paper (64 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2)
Paper sizes	A3 ◪ to A5 ◪, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪) Width: 139.7 to 311.1 mm; Length: 176 to 457.2 mm
Power requirements	Supplied from main unit
Power consumption	Less than 17 W
Dimensions	110 mm (W) × 440 mm (D) × 345 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 3 kg

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Option specifications

Paper Feed Cabinet PC-102

Specifications	
Paper types	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2)
Paper sizes	A3 ◪ to A5 ◪, 11 × 17 ◪ to 8-1/2 × 11 ◪/◨
Paper tray capacity	Tray 3: 500 sheets (80 g/m^2)
Power requirements	Supplied from main unit
Power consumption	Less than 15 W
Dimensions	570 mm (W) × 548 mm (D) × 263 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 22 kg
Unit structure	1 paper tray

Paper Feed Cabinet PC-202

Specifications	
Paper types	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2)
Paper sizes	A3 ◪ to A5 ◪, 11 × 17 ◪ to 8-1/2 × 11 ◪/◨
Paper tray capacity	Upper tray (Tray 3): 500 sheets (80 g/m^2) Lower tray (Tray 4): 500 sheets (80 g/m^2)
Power requirements	Supplied from main unit
Power consumption	Less than 15 W
Dimensions	570 mm (W) × 548 mm (D) × 263 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 26 kg
Unit structure	2 paper trays

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Paper Feed Cabinet PC-402

Specifications	
Paper types	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2)
Paper sizes	A4
Paper tray capacity	2,500 sheets (80 g/m^2)
Power requirements	Supplied from main unit
Power consumption	Less than 45 W
Dimensions	570 mm (W) × 548 mm (D) × 263 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 26 kg

Finisher FS-603

Specifications	
Exit trays	Exit tray 1, exit tray 2
Settings	Normal settings: “Group”, “Sort”, “Offset/Group”, “Offset/Sort”, “Offset/Staple”, and “Saddle Staple”
Paper types	Exit tray 1: “Group/Sort” setting: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2), envelopes, overhead projector transparencies, label sheets “Offset/Sort” setting, “Offset/Group” setting: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Staple: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Exit tray 2: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2)
Paper sizes	Exit tray 1: “Group” setting: A3 to B5 /, A3 Wide (12 × 18) “Sort” setting: A3 to A5 “Staple” setting: A3 to B5 / Exit tray 2: A3 , B4 , A4 w
Paper capacity	Exit tray 1: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2): 1,000 sheets of A4 -size paper or smaller, or 500 sheets of B4 -size paper or larger Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2), envelopes, overhead projector transparencies, label sheets: 20 sheets Exit tray 2: 10 copies (6 to 15 bound pages)* 20 copies (2 to 5 bound pages)
Amount of shift	20 mm

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Specifications	
Staple settings	Exit tray 1: Paper sizes (no. of bound pages): A4 ◪/▯, B5 ◪/▯ (2 to 50 pages), A3 ◪, B4 ◪ (2 to 25 pages) Exit tray 2: Paper sizes (no. of bound pages): A3 ◪ to A4 ◪ (2 to 15 pages)
Power requirements	Supplied from main unit
Power consumption	Less than 65 W
Dimensions	601 mm (W) × 603 mm (D) × 933 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 42 kg (including the horizontal transport unit)
Consumables	Staples MS-5D (5,000 staples for stapling 50 sheets) × 1

* The number of pages that can be bound together differs depending on the paper weight. If 64 g/m^2 paper is used, 6 to 15 pages can be bound together. If 80 g/m^2 paper is used, 6 to 10 pages can be bound together.

Punch Kit PK-501

Specifications	
Number of punched holes	4
Paper types	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2)
Paper sizes	A3 ◪, A4 ▯
Power requirements	Supplied from finisher
Dimensions	90 mm (W) × 560 mm (D) × 170 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 3 kg

Finisher FS-507

Specifications	
Exit trays	Exit tray 1, exit tray 2
Settings	“Sort”, “Group”, “Offset/Sort”, “Offset/Group”, Staple settings, Punch settings
Paper types	Exit tray 1: “Group” setting: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2), overhead projector transparencies, envelopes, label sheets “Punch” setting: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Exit tray 2: “Sort”, “Group”, “Offset/Sort”, “Offset/Group” settings: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), thick paper (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper (151 to 209 g/m^2) “Staple” setting: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) “Punch” setting: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2)

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

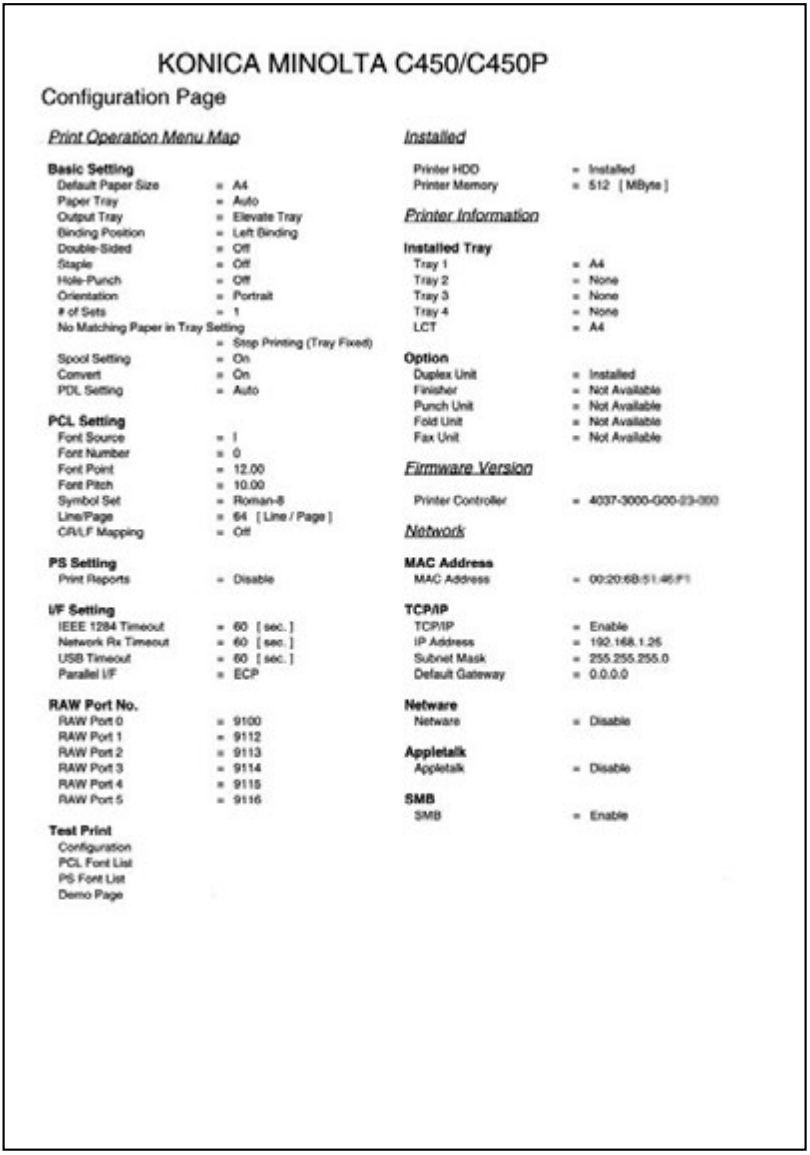
Specifications	
Paper sizes	Exit tray 1: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪) Exit tray 2: A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯, A3 Wide (12 × 18 ◪)
Paper capacity	Exit tray 1: Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2): 250 sheets Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m^2), thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m^2), thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m^2), overhead projector transparencies, envelopes, label sheets: 20 sheets Exit tray 2: Plain paper (80 g/m^2): 3,000 sheets of A4 ◪-size paper or smaller, or 1,500 sheets of B4 ◪-size paper or larger
Amount of shift	30 mm
Staple settings	Paper sizes (no. of bound pages): A3 ◪ to B5◪/▯ (2 to 50 sheets)
Punch settings	Paper sizes: A3 ◪, A4 ▯ Number of punched holes: 4
Power requirements	Supplied from main unit
Power consumption	Less than 63 W
Dimensions	538 mm (W) × 637 mm (D) × 978 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 40 kg (including the horizontal transport unit)
Consumables	Staples MS-5D (5,000 staples for stapling 50 sheets) × 2

Job Separator JS-601

Specifications	
Exit trays	Exit tray 3
Paper types	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2)
Paper sizes	A3 ◪ to B5 ◪/▯
Paper capacity	100 sheets
Dimensions	341 mm (W) × 527 mm (D) × 149 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 2 kg

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10.2 Configuration page



KONICA MINOLTA C450/C450P

Configuration Page

Print Operation Menu Map

Basic Setting
- Default Paper Size = A4
- Paper Tray = Auto
- Output Tray = Elevate Tray
- Binding Position = Left Binding
- Double-Sided = Off
- Staple = Off
- Hole-Punch = Off
- Orientation = Portrait
- # of Sets = 1
- No Matching Paper in Tray Setting = Stop Printing (Tray Fixed)
- Spool Setting = On
- Convert = On
- PDL Setting = Auto

PCL Setting
- Font Source = I
- Font Number = 0
- Font Point = 12.00
- Font Pitch = 10.00
- Symbol Set = Roman-8
- Line/Page = 64 [Line / Page]
- CR/LF Mapping = Off

PS Setting
- Print Reports = Disable

I/F Setting
- IEEE 1284 Timeout = 60 [sec.]
- Network Rx Timeout = 60 [sec.]
- USB Timeout = 60 [sec.]
- Parallel I/F = ECP

RAW Port No.
- RAW Port 0 = 9100
- RAW Port 1 = 9112
- RAW Port 2 = 9113
- RAW Port 3 = 9114
- RAW Port 4 = 9115
- RAW Port 5 = 9116

Test Print
- Configuration
- PCL Font List
- PS Font List
- Demo Page

Installed
- Printer HDD = Installed
- Printer Memory = 512 [MByte]

Printer Information

Installed Tray
- Tray 1 = A4
- Tray 2 = None
- Tray 3 = None
- Tray 4 = None
- LCT = A4

Option
- Duplex Unit = Installed
- Finisher = Not Available
- Punch Unit = Not Available
- Fold Unit = Not Available
- Fax Unit = Not Available

Firmware Version
- Printer Controller = 4037-3000-G00-23-000

Network

MAC Address
- MAC Address = 00:20:6B:51:46:F1

TCP/IP
- TCP/IP = Enable
- IP Address = 192.168.1.25
- Subnet Mask = 255.255.255.0
- Default Gateway = 0.0.0.0

Netware
- Netware = Disable

Appletalk
- Appletalk = Disable

SMB
- SMB = Enable

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10.3 Font list

PCL font list

KONICA MINOLTA C450/C450P

PCL Font List P.1

Internal Fonts

Font	Pitch/Point	Escape Sequence	Font #	Font ID
Courier	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s0b4099T	00000	
CG Times	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4101T	00001	
CG Times Bold	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4101T	00002	
CG Times Italic	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4101T	00003	
CG Times Bold Italic	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b4101T	00004	
CG Omega	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4113T	00005	
CG Omega Bold	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4113T	00006	
CG Omega Italic	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4113T	00007	
CG Omega Bold Italic	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b4113T	00008	
Coronet	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4116T	00009	
Clarendon Condensed	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s3b4140T	00010	
Univers Medium	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4148T	00011	
Univers Bold	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4148T	00012	
Univers Medium Italic	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4148T	00013	
Univers Bold Italic	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s3b4148T	00014	
Univers Med. Condensed	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s0b4148T	00015	
Univers Bold Condensed	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s3b4148T	00016	
Univers Med. Cond. It.	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s0b4148T	00017	
Univers Bold Cond. It.	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s3b4148T	00018	
Antique Olive	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4168T	00019	
Antique Olive Bold	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4168T	00020	
Antique Olive Italic	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4168T	00021	
Garamond Antiqua	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b4197T	00022	
Garamond Halbfett	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b4197T	00023	
Garamond Kursiv	Scalable	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v1s0b4197T	00024	

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

PS font list

KONICA MINOLTA C450/C450P

PS Font List

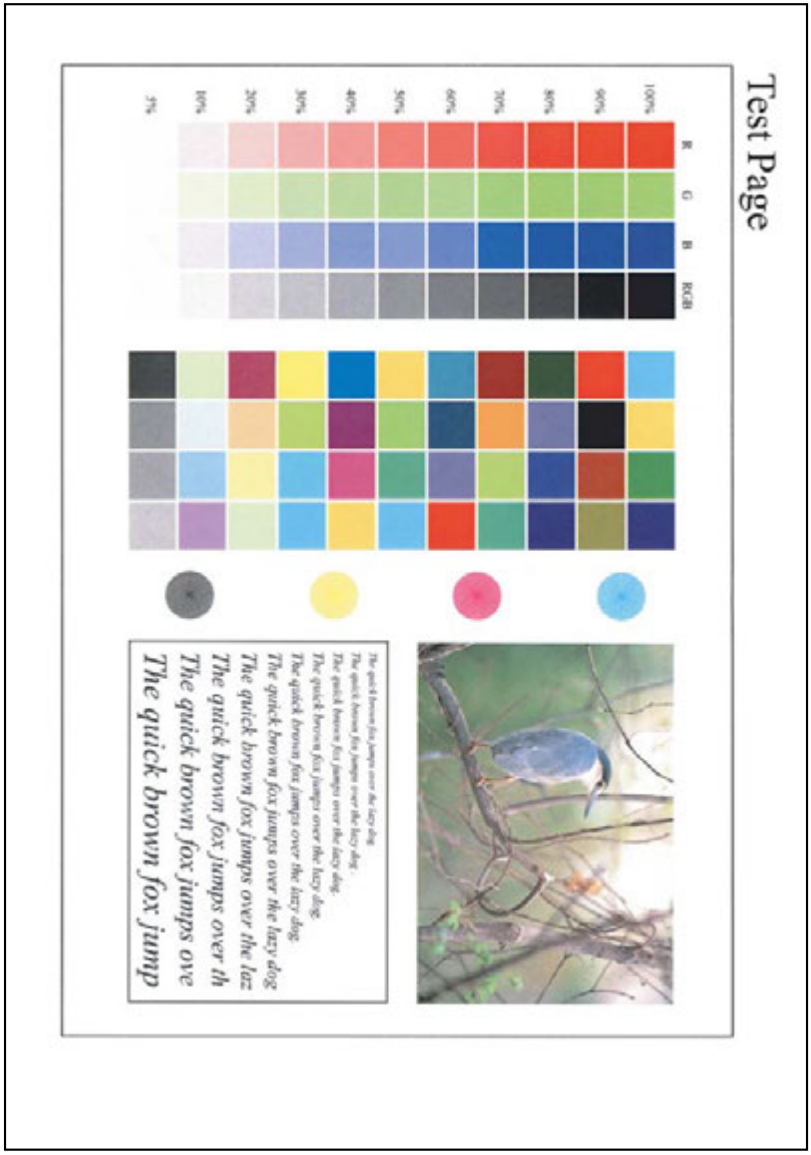
P.1

Internal Fonts

Font		Font #
Albertus MT	AlbertusMT	00000
Albertus MT Italic	AlbertusMT-Italic	00001
Albertus MT Light	AlbertusMT-Light	00002
Antique Olive Roman	AntiqueOlive-Roman	00003
Antique Olive Italic	AntiqueOlive-Italic	00004
Antique Olive Bold	AntiqueOlive-Bold	00005
Antique Olive Compact	AntiqueOlive-Compact	00006
Apple Chancery	Apple-Chancery	00007
Arial	ArialMT	00008
Arial Italic	Arial-ItalicMT	00009
Arial Bold	Arial-BoldMT	00010
Arial Bold Italic	Arial-BoldItalicMT	00011
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book	AvantGarde-Book	00012
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique	AvantGarde-BookOblique	00013
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	AvantGarde-Demi	00014
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique	AvantGarde-DemiOblique	00015
Bodoni Roman	Bodoni	00016
Bodoni Italic	Bodoni-Italic	00017
Bodoni Bold	Bodoni-Bold	00018
Bodoni Bold Italic	Bodoni-BoldItalic	00019
Bodoni Poster	Bodoni-Poster	00020
Bodoni Poster Compressed	Bodoni-PosterCompressed	00021
ITC Bookman Light	Bookman-Light	00022
ITC Bookman Light Italic	Bookman-LightItalic	00023
ITC Bookman Demi	Bookman-Demi	00024
ITC Bookman Demi Italic	Bookman-DemiItalic	00025
	Carta	00026
Chicago	Chicago	00027
Clarendon Roman	Clarendon	00028
Clarendon Bold	Clarendon-Bold	00029

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10.4 Test page



10.5 Glossary

Term	Definition
10Base-T/100Base-TX/ 1000Base-TX	An Ethernet standard, which is a cable consisting of twisted copper wire pairs. The transmission speed of 10Base-T is 10 Mbps, of 100Base-TX is 100 Mbps, and of 1000Base-TX is 1000 Mbps.
AppleTalk	A generic name for the protocol suite developed by Apple Computer for computer networking
APS	“Auto Paper Select” setting
ATS	Automatic paper-tray-switching feature (ATS=Auto tray select)
bit	Abbreviation for Binary Digit. The smallest unit of information (data quantity) on a computer or printer. Displays data using 0 or 1.
BMP	Abbreviation for Bitmap. A file format for saving image data which uses the .bmp extension. Commonly used on Windows platforms. You can specify the color depth from monochrome (2 values) to full color (16,777,216 colors). Images are not usually compressed when saved.
BOOTP	Abbreviation for Bootstrap Protocol. A protocol in which a client computer on a TCP/IP network automatically specifies the network settings from the server. Currently, DHCP, which is an advanced protocol based on BOOTP, is mainly used.
Brightness	Brightness of a display screen
Byte	Unit of information (data quantity) on a computer or printer. Configured as 1 byte equals 8 bits.
Client	A computer that uses the services provided by a server through a network
CMYK	Abbreviation for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black. The colors in the toner and ink used for color printing can all be represented by changing the mixing ratio of the four colors of CMYK.
Color Matching	Technology for decreasing the difference in color among different devices such as scanners, displays, and printers
Default Gateway	A device, such as a computer or router, used as a “gateway” to access computers not on the same LAN
DHCP	Abbreviation for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol in which a client computer on a TCP/IP network automatically specifies the network settings from the server. With collective management of the IP address for DHCP clients on the DHCP server, you can avoid duplication of an address and you can build a network easily.
DNS	Abbreviation for Domain Name System. A system that acquires the supported IP addresses from host names in a network environment. DNS allows the user to access other computers over a network by specifying host names, instead of difficult to memorize and understand IP addresses.
DPI (dpi)	Abbreviation for Dots Per Inch. A resolution unit used by printers and scanners. Indicates how many dots per inch are represented in an image. The higher the value, the higher the resolution.
Driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a peripheral device.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Term	Definition
Ethernet	LAN transmission line standard
Frame Type	Type of communication format used in a NetWare environment. Communication is not possible if the same frame type is not used.
FTP	Abbreviation for File Transfer Protocol. A protocol for transferring files over the Internet or an intranet on the TCP/IP network.
Gateway	Hardware and software used as the point where a network is connected to a network. A gateway also changes data formats, addresses, and protocols according to the connected network.
Grayscale	Monochrome image expressive form using the gradation information from black to white
Hard Disk	Large capacity storage device for storing data. The data can be stored even if the power is turned off.
Host Name	Displayed name of a device over a network
HTTP	Abbreviation for HyperText Transfer Protocol. A protocol used to send and receive data between a Web server and a client (Web browser). Documents containing images, recordings, and video clips can be exchanged with the expressive form information.
IEEE 1284	Abbreviation for Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers 1284. A parallel port standard that was developed for printers.
Install	To install hardware, operating systems, applications, printer drivers on to a computer
IPP	Abbreviation for Internet Printing Protocol. A protocol that sends and receives print data and controls printers over the Internet on a TCP/IP network. Data can also be sent to printers in remote areas to print over the Internet.
IPX/SPX	Abbreviation for Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. A protocol developed by Novel, Inc. that is commonly used under a NetWare environment.
IP Address	A code (address) that is used to identify individual network devices over the Internet. A maximum of three digits for four numbers are displayed such as 192.168.1.10. IP addresses are assigned to devices, including computers, which are connected to the Internet.
LAN	Abbreviation for Local Area Network. A network which connects computers on the same floor, in the same building, or in neighboring buildings.
Local Printer	A printer connected to a parallel or USB port of a computer
LPR/LPD	Abbreviation for Line Printer Request/Line Printer Daemon. A printing method over a network in a Windows NT system or UNIX system. Using TCP/IP, you can output print data from Windows or Unix to a printer over a network.
MAC Address	Abbreviation for Media Access Control address. With a special ID number for each Ethernet card, data can be sent and received between the cards. A number consists of 48 bits. The first 24 bits consist of a special number for each manufacture controlling and assigning IEEE. The last 24 bits consist of a number that the manufacturer assigns uniquely to the card.
Memory	Storage device for storing data temporally. When the power is turned off the data may or may not be erased.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Term	Definition
NDPS	Abbreviation for Novell Distributed Print Services. Provides a highly efficient printing solution in an NDS environment. By using the NDPS as a printer server, you can output from the desired printer, automatically download the printer driver of a newly installed printer, simplify and automate complicated management environments related to printer use, and integrate management related to the network printer.
NDS	Abbreviation for Novell Directory Services. The servers and printers on a network and the shared resources of the user's information, as well as the user's access authority over these items can be consolidated in the hierarchy structure.
NetBIOS	Abbreviation for Network Basic Input Output System. A communication interface developed by IBM.
NetBEUI	Abbreviation for NetBIOS Extended User Interface. A network protocol developed by IBM. By simply specifying the computer name, you can build a small-scale network.
NetWare	Network operating system developed by Novell. NetWare IPX/SPX is used as the communication protocol.
Nprinter/Rprinter	Remote printer support module for using a printer server under a NetWare environment. Use NetWare 3.x with Rprinter, and NetWare 4.x with Nprinter.
OHP Interleave	Set this function to insert paper between overhead projector transparencies that are being printed.
OHP/OHT	OHP (overhead projector) transparencies which are used for presentations
OS	Abbreviation for Operating System. Basic software for controlling the system of a computer.
Outline Font	A font using lines and curves to display an outline of a character. Large-size characters can be displayed on a screen or printed with no jagged edges.
Parallel Interface	Data transmission method for sending and receiving data of multiple signals simultaneously. IEEE 1284 is commonly used as the printer connection.
PDF	Abbreviation for Portable Document Format. An electronically formatted document which uses the .pdf extension. Based on the PostScript format, you can use the free Adobe Acrobat Reader software to view documents.
PDL	Abbreviation for Page Description Language. The language for specifying the print image per page to a printer when printing using a page printer.
Peer-to-peer	A network format that allows connected devices to communicate without using a dedicated server
Plug-and-play	Ability to automatically find and use the appropriate driver when a peripheral device is connected to a computer
PostScript	A typical page-descriptive language developed by Adobe and is commonly used for high quality printing
PPD	Abbreviation for PostScript Printer Description. A file used to describe the resolution, usable paper size, and the PostScript printer model special information.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Term	Definition
Preview	A function that allows you to view an image before processing a print or scan job
Print Job	Print request transmitted from a computer to a printing device
Print Queue	A software system which queues the generated print job in the devices
Printer Buffer	Memory domain temporarily used for data processing of a print job
Profile	Color attribute file The dedicated file that contains the summarized correlation of the input and output of each primary color used so that the color input and output devices can reproduce the color.
Proof Copy	Press this key to print a single sample copy and stop the machine so that it can be checked before printing a large number of copies. This prevents copy errors from occurring in a large number of copies.
Property	Attribute information When using a printer driver, various functions can be specified in the file properties. In the file properties, you can check the attribute information of the file.
Protocol	The rules that allow computers to communicate with other computers or peripheral devices
Proxy Server	A server that is installed to act as an intermediary connection between each client and different servers to effectively ensure security over the entire system for Internet connections
Pserver	Print server module under a NetWare environment that monitors, changes, pauses, restarts, or cancels a print job
Queue Name	Name specified to each device that allows printing when network printing
RIP	Abbreviation for Raster Image Processor. Process that develops picture images from described text data using the PostScript page description language. The processor is usually integrated in the printer.
RGB	Abbreviation for Red, Green, and Blue. Represents all colors by changing the brightness ratio of the RGB 3 colors using the primary colors used by the color representation in a monitor.
Resolution	Displays the ability to reproduce the details of images and print matter correctly
Save in User Box	Temporarily saves the job on the hard disk so that it can later be recalled and used again
Screen Font	A font for displaying text and symbols on a CRT monitor
Shared Printer	A printer setup that allows the printer to be used by multiple computers connected to a server over a network
SLP	Abbreviation for Service Location Protocol. A protocol capable of finding services over a TCP/IP network and automatically specifying a client.
SMB	Abbreviation for Server Message Block. A protocol that shares files and printers over a network and which is mainly used by Microsoft Windows.

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Term	Definition
SMTP	Abbreviation for Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. A protocol for sending and forwarding e-mail.
SNMP	Abbreviation for Simple Network Management Protocol. A management protocol in a network environment using TCP/IP.
Spool	Abbreviation for Simultaneous Peripheral Operation On-Line. For printer output, data is not sent directly to the printer, it is temporarily stored in another location, then sent to the printer collectively.
Subnet Mask	The unit used to divide a TCP/IP network into small networks (subnetworks). It is used to identify the bits in a network address that are higher than the IP address.
TCP/IP	Abbreviation for Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The de facto standard protocol used by the Internet that uses IP addresses to identify each network device.
TrueType	An outline font that was developed by Apple Computer and Microsoft. It is used as a standard by Macintosh and Microsoft Windows and can be used both on a display and in print.
Uninstall	To delete software installed on a computer
USB	Abbreviation for Universal Serial Bus. A general interface standard for connecting a mouse, printer, and other devices to a computer.
Web Browser	Software such as Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator for viewing Web pages

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

10.6 Index

A

Accessing 9-3
Account name 4-23
Account track 3-21, 3-52, 3-102, 9-23
Admin mode 9-4
Admin. setting 4-30
Admin. setting menu 4-10
Administrator mode 9-6, 9-13
AppleTalk 2-27, 2-56
Arrow keys 4-3
Automatic paper-tray-switching 5-8

B

Back cover 3-71, 3-89
Back cover page 3-22, 3-59, 3-107
Binding position 3-55, 3-71, 3-89, 3-104
Binding position setting 3-16
Booklet 3-13, 3-54, 3-71, 3-89
Border 3-88, 3-100
Box tab 9-9, 9-13
Bypass tray 5-18, 8-7

C

Call center 4-32
Call service 8-3
CD-ROM configuration 2-3
Center binding 5-25
Charger-cleaning 6-5
Charger-cleaning tool 6-5, 7-4
Cleaning 7-3
Collate 3-71, 3-87, 3-99, 3-104
Combination 3-14, 3-54
Configuration page 10-10
Consumables 6-3
Control panel 4-3, 7-3
Copies 3-73, 3-87, 3-99
Copies & Pages 3-99
Create overlay 3-26
Custom page size 3-85
Custom paper size 3-98
Custom sizes 3-11, 3-48

D

Default Gateway 2-30
Device options 3-74
Distribution number stamping 3-30
Double-sided 3-13, 3-55, 3-71, 3-89
Duplex 3-71, 3-89
Duplex unit 8-9, 10-5

E

Easy set 3-69
Electrostatic charger 7-4
Ethernet 1-36

F

File margin 3-15
Film 5-16
Filter 2 6-5
Finisher 10-7, 10-8
Finishing 3-104
Finishing options 3-89
Finishing settings 5-23
Fold 3-71, 3-89, 3-104
Font 3-33
Font list 4-24, 10-11
Front cover 3-71, 3-89
Front cover page 3-22, 3-59, 3-107
Fusing unit 8-16

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

G

Gather option information 3-35, 3-66
General 3-87
Glossy mode 3-31, 3-64

H

Hole punch 3-17, 3-57, 3-71
Hole-punch waste container 7-5, 7-7
Horizontal transport unit cover 8-19, 8-23
Housing 7-3

I

I/F setting 4-31
Image processing 3-105
Image transfer belt 8-13, 8-16
Image transfer roller 8-13, 8-16
Interfaces 1-36
IP address 2-30
IPP printing 2-38
IS OpenAPI 4-33

J

Jammed-staple-clearing dial . 8-28
Job operation 4-23, 9-17
Job operation menu 4-10
Job separator 8-19, 10-9
Job separator cover 8-19
Job tab 9-9

L

labels 1-15
Lateral guides 5-18
Layout 3-53, 3-73, 3-88, 3-100
Layout direction 3-88, 3-100
LCT 5-16, 8-12
Loading copy paper 5-10
Logging on to administrator mode 9-6
Login 9-6
Low power mode 1-34
LPR 2-27
LPR printing 2-37

M

Mac OS 9.2 3-78
Mac OS X 3-93
Macintosh 2-19, 2-56
Main menu 4-10
Maintenance 7-3
Menu/Select 4-3
Messages 8-42
Misfeed-clearing dial 2 8-31
Misfeed-clearing dial in the folding section 8-31
Misfeed-clearing guide 8-19
Misfeed-clearing dial 1 ..... 6-12, 8-23, 8-31
Mode list 4-32
More options 3-73

N

N in 1 ..... 3-54, 3-73
Near life limit 8-36
NetWare 2-27, 2-42
Network printing 2-27
Network setting 4-30
Network tab 9-16
Non-standard-sized paper 5-3

O

Offset 3-71, 3-89, 3-104
Option ..... 1-18, 3-34, 3-65, ... 3-76, 3-91, 3-108
Orientation 3-73, 3-83, 3-97
Original image type 3-31, 3-64

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Original size 3-47
Output method 3-18, 3-49, 3-102, 9-17
Output setting 4-24
Output size 3-47
Output tray 3-89
Overlay 3-24

P

Page attributes 3-83, 3-97
Page setup 3-83
Page setup dialog box 3-4
Page setup dialog box 3-78, 3-93
Pages per sheet 3-88, 3-100
PageScope Web Connection 2-33, 9-3
Paper 3-83
Paper capacities 5-4
Paper feed 3-101
Paper feed cabinet 10-6
Paper misfeed 8-5
Paper misfeed indications 8-6
Paper size 3-73, 3-97, 5-3
Paper source 3-12, 3-73, 3-87
Paper tab 3-73
Paper take-up roller 7-4, 8-13
Paper tray 4-24
Paper tray (Tray 3 or 4) 8-11
Paper tray menu 4-10
Paper type 3-12, 3-107, 5-4
Parallel interface 1-36
Parameters 4-23
Pattern 3-31
PCL driver 3-5
Per page setting .3-22, 3-23, 3-58
Plug and Play 2-13
PostScript driver 3-39
Power save 4-25
PPD driver 3-70, 3-78, 3-93
Presets 3-109
Print area 5-8
Print dialog 3-78
Print dialog box 3-4, 3-93
Print jobs 9-17
Print overlay 3-24
Print reports 4-24
Print tab 9-12, 9-15
Printer driver 2-4, 3-3
Printer setting 4-27
Printer-specific options 3-89
Proof and print ...3-18, 3-49, 9-17
Protective cap 6-5
Punch 3-89, 3-104, 5-24
Punch kit 10-8

Q

Quality 3-31, 3-63
Quality adjustment 3-31, 3-64

R

Recalling a job 9-19
Removal indicator 6-12, 8-23, 8-31
Replace the toner cartridge 6-5
Replacing the staple cartridge 6-8, 6-12
Right-side door 8-13
Rotated 3-73

S

Safety information 1-3
Save in user box 3-18, 3-49, 3-102, 9-17
Save in user box and print 3-18, 3-49, 9-17
Save/Restore setting 3-36

ПЯТЫЙ ПАРТНЕР
копиры • принтеры • мфу доставка • сервис • гарантия info@km-shop.ru (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru

Saving the driver settings 3-67, 3-109
Scale 3-83, 3-97
Secure print 3-49
Secure print 3-18, 3-102, 4-23, 9-17
Security 3-102
Security setting 4-32
Select color 3-31, 3-64
Selecting a printer 2-21
Settings menu 4-3, 4-10
Setup 3-47, 3-107
Setup tab 3-10
Sheet of staples 8-28
Sleep mode 1-35
SMB printing 2-27, 2-34
Space requirements 1-16
Special paper 5-5
Specifications 10-3
Standard-sized paper 5-3
Staple .....3-16, 3-56, 3-71, ...3-89, 3-104, 5-23, 6-8
Staple cartridge holder 6-8, 6-12, 8-28, 8-31
Staple case 6-8, 6-12
Staple jam 8-28
Stapler 1 .....6-8, 8-28
Stapler 2 .....6-8, 8-28
Stapler unit 6-12, 8-31
Storing jobs 9-19
Subnet mask 2-30
System requirements 2-5, 9-3
System setting 4-24
System tab 9-9, 9-13

T

Time adjustment 4-32
Timing roller 8-13
Toner cartridge 6-3
Toner-cartridge-securing lever 6-5
Tray 1 .....5-10, 8-10
Tray 2 .....5-14, 8-10
Tray 3 5-14
Tray 4 5-14
Tray extension 5-18
Tray setting 4-24
Troubleshooting 8-3, 8-37
Turn misfeed-clearing dials 8-19
Turning off 1-33
Turning on 1-32

U

Uninstalling 2-18, 2-23
USB interface 1-36
User box 4-23
User box oper. 4-32
User mode 9-4, 9-9
User setting 4-24
User setting menu 4-10

W

Waste container 7-5
Watermark 3-28, 3-59
Windows printing 2-34

Пятый партнер info@km-shop.ru 8 (800) 555-16-46 8 (495) 646-04-26 www.km-shop.ru